4 Vector Spaces

INTRODUCTORY EXAMPLE

Space Flight and Control Systems

Twelve stories high and weighing 75 tons, *Columbia* rose majestically off the launching pad on a cool Palm Sunday morning in April 1981. A product of ten years' intensive research and development, the first U.S. space shuttle was a triumph of control systems engineering design, involving many branches of engineering—aeronautical, chemical, electrical, hydraulic, and mechanical.

The space shuttle's control systems are absolutely critical for flight. Because the shuttle is an unstable airframe, it requires constant computer monitoring during atmospheric flight. The flight control system sends a stream of commands to aerodynamic control surfaces and 44 small thruster jets. Figure 1 shows a typical closed-loop feedback system that controls the pitch of the shuttle during flight. (The pitch is the elevation angle of the nose cone.) The junction symbols (⊗) show where signals from various sensors are added to the computer signals flowing along the top of the figure.

Mathematically, the input and output signals to an engineering system are functions. It is important in applications that these functions can be added, as in Figure 1, and multiplied by scalars. These two operations on functions have algebraic properties that are completely analogous to the operations of adding vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and multiplying a vector by a scalar, as we shall see in Sections 4.1 and 4.8. For this reason, the set of all possible inputs (functions) is called a *vector space*. The mathematical foundation for systems engineering rests

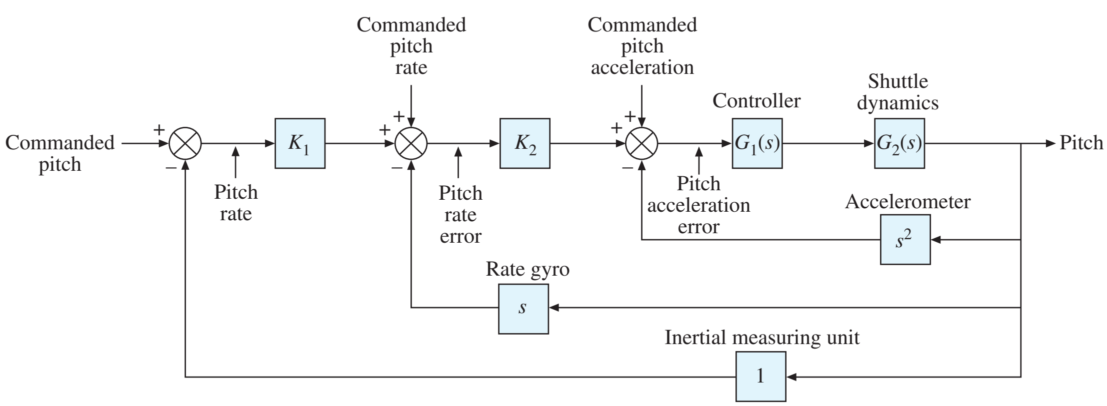


FIGURE 1 Pitch control system for the space shuttle. (*Source:* Adapted from *Space Shuttle GN&C Operations Manual*, Rockwell International, ©1988.)

on vector spaces of functions, and Chapter 4 extends the theory of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ to include such functions. Later on, you will see how other vector spaces arise in engineering, physics, and statistics.

WEB

The mathematical seeds planted in Chapters 1 and 2 germinate and begin to blossom in this chapter. The beauty and power of linear algebra will be seen more clearly when you view $\mathbb{R}^n$ as only one of a variety of vector spaces that arise naturally in applied problems. Actually, a study of vector spaces is not much different from a study of $\mathbb{R}^n$ itself, because you can use your geometric experience with $\mathbb{R}^2$ and $\mathbb{R}^3$ to visualize many general concepts.

Beginning with basic definitions in Section 4.1, the general vector space framework develops gradually throughout the chapter. A goal of Sections 4.3–4.5 is to demonstrate how closely other vector spaces resemble $\mathbb{R}^n$. Section 4.6 on rank is one of the high points of the chapter, using vector space terminology to tie together important facts about rectangular matrices. Section 4.8 applies the theory of the chapter to discrete signals and difference equations used in digital control systems such as in the space shuttle. Markov chains, in Section 4.9, provide a change of pace from the more theoretical sections of the chapter and make good examples for concepts to be introduced in Chapter 5.

4.1 VECTOR SPACES AND SUBSPACES

Much of the theory in Chapters 1 and 2 rested on certain simple and obvious algebraic properties of $\mathbb{R}^n$, listed in Section 1.3. In fact, many other mathematical systems have the same properties. The specific properties of interest are listed in the following definition.

DEFINITION

A **vector space** is a nonempty set V of objects, called *vectors*, on which are defined two operations, called *addition* and *multiplication by scalars* (real numbers), subject to the ten axioms (or rules) listed below.[1] The axioms must hold for all vectors $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ in V and for all scalars c and d.

1. The sum of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$, denoted by $\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}$, is in V.
2. $\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}=\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{u}$.
3. $(\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v})+\mathbf{w}=\mathbf{u}+(\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{w})$.
4. There is a **zero** vector $\mathbf{0}$ in V such that $\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{0}=\mathbf{u}$.
5. For each $\mathbf{u}$ in V, there is a vector $-\mathbf{u}$ in V such that $\mathbf{u}+(-\mathbf{u})=\mathbf{0}$.
6. The scalar multiple of $\mathbf{u}$ by c, denoted by $c\mathbf{u}$, is in V.
7. $c(\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v})=c\mathbf{u}+c\mathbf{v}$.
8. $(c+d)\mathbf{u}=c\mathbf{u}+d\mathbf{u}$.
9. $c(d\mathbf{u})=(cd)\mathbf{u}$.
10. $1\mathbf{u}=\mathbf{u}$.

[1] Technically, V is a *real vector space*. All of the theory in this chapter also holds for a *complex vector space* in which the scalars are complex numbers. We will look at this briefly in Chapter 5. Until then, all scalars are assumed to be real.

Using only these axioms, one can show that the zero vector in Axiom 4 is unique, and the vector $-\mathbf{u}$, called the **negative** of $\mathbf{u}$, in Axiom 5 is unique for each $\mathbf{u}$ in V. See Exercises 25 and 26. Proofs of the following simple facts are also outlined in the exercises:

For each $\mathbf{u}$ in V and scalar c,

$$0\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0} \tag{1}$$

$$c\mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0} \tag{2}$$

$$-\mathbf{u} = (-1)\mathbf{u} \tag{3}$$

EXAMPLE 1 The spaces $\mathbb{R}^n$, where $n \geq 1$, are the premier examples of vector spaces. The geometric intuition developed for $\mathbb{R}^3$ will help you understand and visualize many concepts throughout the chapter. ■

EXAMPLE 2 Let V be the set of all arrows (directed line segments) in three-dimensional space, with two arrows regarded as equal if they have the same length and point in the same direction. Define addition by the parallelogram rule (from Section 1.3), and for each $\mathbf{v}$ in V, define $c\mathbf{v}$ to be the arrow whose length is $|c|$ times the length of $\mathbf{v}$, pointing in the same direction as $\mathbf{v}$ if $c \geq 0$ and otherwise pointing in the opposite direction. (See Figure 1.) Show that V is a vector space. This space is a common model in physical problems for various forces.

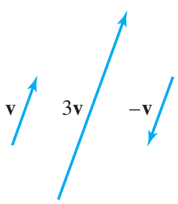


FIGURE 1

SOLUTION The definition of V is geometric, using concepts of length and direction. No xyz-coordinate system is involved. An arrow of zero length is a single point and represents the zero vector. The negative of $\mathbf{v}$ is $(-1)\mathbf{v}$. So Axioms 1, 4, 5, 6, and 10 are evident. The rest are verified by geometry. For instance, see Figures 2 and 3. ■

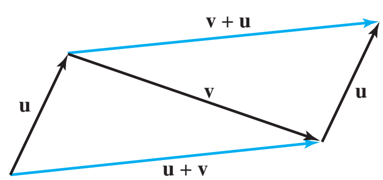


FIGURE 2 $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}$.

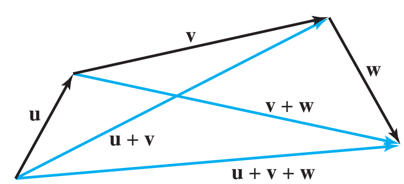


FIGURE 3 $(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{u} + (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w})$.

EXAMPLE 3 Let $\mathbb{S}$ be the space of all doubly infinite sequences of numbers (usually written in a row rather than a column):

$$\{y_k\} = (\ldots, y_{-2}, y_{-1}, y_0, y_1, y_2, \ldots)$$

If $\{z_k\}$ is another element of $\mathbb{S}$, then the sum $\{y_k\} + \{z_k\}$ is the sequence $\{y_k + z_k\}$ formed by adding corresponding terms of $\{y_k\}$ and $\{z_k\}$. The scalar multiple $c\{y_k\}$ is the sequence $\{cy_k\}$. The vector space axioms are verified in the same way as for $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Elements of $\mathbb{S}$ arise in engineering, for example, whenever a signal is measured (or sampled) at discrete times. A signal might be electrical, mechanical, optical, and so on. The major control systems for the space shuttle, mentioned in the chapter introduction, use discrete (or digital) signals. For convenience, we will call $\mathbb{S}$ the space of (discrete-time) **signals**. A signal may be visualized by a graph as in Figure 4. ■

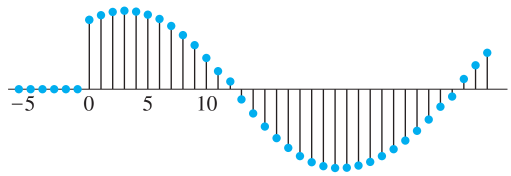


FIGURE 4 A discrete-time signal.

EXAMPLE 4 For $n \geq 0$, the set $\mathbb{P}_n$ of polynomials of degree at most n consists of all polynomials of the form

$$\mathbf{p}(t) = a_0 + a_1 t + a_2 t^2 + \cdots + a_n t^n \tag{4}$$

where the coefficients $a_0, \ldots, a_n$ and the variable t are real numbers. The *degree* of $\mathbf{p}$ is the highest power of t in (4) whose coefficient is not zero. If $\mathbf{p}(t) = a_0 \neq 0$, the degree of $\mathbf{p}$ is zero. If all the coefficients are zero, $\mathbf{p}$ is called the *zero polynomial*. The zero polynomial is included in $\mathbb{P}_n$ even though its degree, for technical reasons, is not defined.

If $\mathbf{p}$ is given by (4) and if $\mathbf{q}(t) = b_0 + b_1 t + \cdots + b_n t^n$, then the sum $\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{q}$ is defined by

$$\begin{aligned}(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{q})(t) &= \mathbf{p}(t) + \mathbf{q}(t) \\ &= (a_0 + b_0) + (a_1 + b_1)t + \cdots + (a_n + b_n)t^n\end{aligned}$$

The scalar multiple $c\mathbf{p}$ is the polynomial defined by

$$(c\mathbf{p})(t) = c\mathbf{p}(t) = ca_0 + (ca_1)t + \cdots + (ca_n)t^n$$

These definitions satisfy Axioms 1 and 6 because $\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{q}$ and $c\mathbf{p}$ are polynomials of degree less than or equal to n. Axioms 2, 3, and 7–10 follow from properties of the real numbers. Clearly, the zero polynomial acts as the zero vector in Axiom 4. Finally, $(-1)\mathbf{p}$ acts as the negative of $\mathbf{p}$, so Axiom 5 is satisfied. Thus $\mathbb{P}_n$ is a vector space.

The vector spaces $\mathbb{P}_n$ for various n are used, for instance, in statistical trend analysis of data, discussed in Section 6.8. ■

EXAMPLE 5 Let V be the set of all real-valued functions defined on a set $\mathbb{D}$. (Typically, $\mathbb{D}$ is the set of real numbers or some interval on the real line.) Functions are added in the usual way: $\mathbf{f} + \mathbf{g}$ is the function whose value at t in the domain $\mathbb{D}$ is $\mathbf{f}(t) + \mathbf{g}(t)$. Likewise, for a scalar c and an $\mathbf{f}$ in V, the scalar multiple $c\mathbf{f}$ is the function whose value at t is $c\mathbf{f}(t)$. For instance, if $\mathbb{D} = \mathbb{R}$, $\mathbf{f}(t) = 1 + \sin 2t$, and $\mathbf{g}(t) = 2 + .5t$, then

$$(\mathbf{f} + \mathbf{g})(t) = 3 + \sin 2t + .5t \quad \text{and} \quad (2\mathbf{g})(t) = 4 + t$$

Two functions in V are equal if and only if their values are equal for every t in $\mathbb{D}$. Hence the zero vector in V is the function that is identically zero, $\mathbf{f}(t) = 0$ for all t, and the negative of $\mathbf{f}$ is $(-1)\mathbf{f}$. Axioms 1 and 6 are obviously true, and the other axioms follow from properties of the real numbers, so V is a vector space. ■

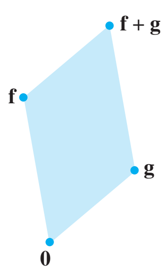


FIGURE 5
The sum of two vectors (functions).

It is important to think of each function in the vector space V of Example 5 as a single object, as just one “point” or vector in the vector space. The sum of two vectors $\mathbf{f}$ and $\mathbf{g}$ (functions in V, or elements of *any* vector space) can be visualized as in Figure 5, because this can help you carry over to a general vector space the geometric intuition you have developed while working with the vector space $\mathbb{R}^n$. See the *Study Guide* for help as you learn to adopt this more general point of view.

Subspaces

In many problems, a vector space consists of an appropriate subset of vectors from some larger vector space. In this case, only three of the ten vector space axioms need to be checked; the rest are automatically satisfied.

DEFINITION

A **subspace** of a vector space V is a subset H of V that has three properties:

a. The zero vector of V is in H.[2]

b. H is closed under vector addition. That is, for each $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in H, the sum $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ is in H.

c. H is closed under multiplication by scalars. That is, for each $\mathbf{u}$ in H and each scalar c, the vector $c\mathbf{u}$ is in H.

Properties (a), (b), and (c) guarantee that a subspace H of V is itself a *vector space*, under the vector space operations already defined in V. To verify this, note that properties (a), (b), and (c) are Axioms 1, 4, and 6. Axioms 2, 3, and 7–10 are automatically true in H because they apply to all elements of V, including those in H. Axiom 5 is also true in H, because if $\mathbf{u}$ is in H, then $(-1)\mathbf{u}$ is in H by property (c), and we know from equation (3) earlier in this section that $(-1)\mathbf{u}$ is the vector $-\mathbf{u}$ in Axiom 5.

So every subspace is a vector space. Conversely, every vector space is a subspace (of itself and possibly of other larger spaces). The term *subspace* is used when at least two vector spaces are in mind, with one inside the other, and the phrase *subspace of V* identifies V as the larger space. (See Figure 6.)

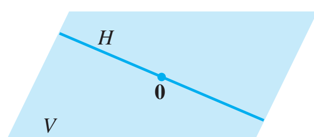


FIGURE 6
A subspace of V.

EXAMPLE 6 The set consisting of only the zero vector in a vector space V is a subspace of V, called the **zero subspace** and written as $\{\mathbf{0}\}$. ■

EXAMPLE 7 Let $\mathbb{P}$ be the set of all polynomials with real coefficients, with operations in $\mathbb{P}$ defined as for functions. Then $\mathbb{P}$ is a subspace of the space of all real-valued functions defined on $\mathbb{R}$. Also, for each $n \geq 0$, $\mathbb{P}_n$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{P}$, because $\mathbb{P}_n$ is a subset of $\mathbb{P}$ that contains the zero polynomial, the sum of two polynomials in $\mathbb{P}_n$ is also in $\mathbb{P}_n$, and a scalar multiple of a polynomial in $\mathbb{P}_n$ is also in $\mathbb{P}_n$. ■

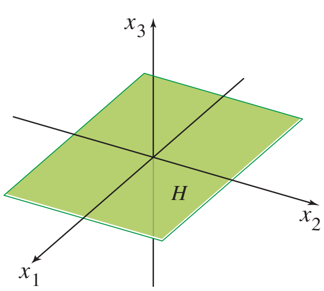


FIGURE 7
The x_1x_2-plane as a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

EXAMPLE 8 The vector space $\mathbb{R}^2$ is *not* a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$ because $\mathbb{R}^2$ is not even a subset of $\mathbb{R}^3$. (The vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ all have three entries, whereas the vectors in $\mathbb{R}^2$ have only two.) The set

$$H = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} s \\ t \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} : s \text{ and } t \text{ are real} \right\}$$

is a subset of $\mathbb{R}^3$ that "looks" and "acts" like $\mathbb{R}^2$, although it is logically distinct from $\mathbb{R}^2$. See Figure 7. Show that H is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

SOLUTION The zero vector is in H, and H is closed under vector addition and scalar multiplication because these operations on vectors in H always produce vectors whose third entries are zero (and so belong to H). Thus H is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$. ■

---

[2] Some texts replace property (a) in this definition by the assumption that H is nonempty. Then (a) could be deduced from (c) and the fact that $0\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$. But the best way to test for a subspace is to look first for the zero vector. If $\mathbf{0}$ is in H, then properties (b) and (c) must be checked. If $\mathbf{0}$ is *not* in H, then H cannot be a subspace and the other properties need not be checked.

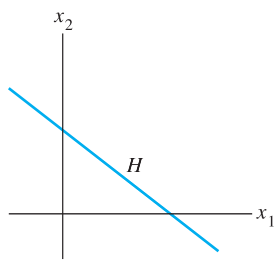


FIGURE 8
A line that is not a vector space.

EXAMPLE 9 A plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$ *not* through the origin is not a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$, because the plane does not contain the zero vector of $\mathbb{R}^3$. Similarly, a line in $\mathbb{R}^2$ *not* through the origin, such as in Figure 8, is *not* a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^2$. ■

A Subspace Spanned by a Set

The next example illustrates one of the most common ways of describing a subspace. As in Chapter 1, the term **linear combination** refers to any sum of scalar multiples of vectors, and Span $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ denotes the set of all vectors that can be written as linear combinations of $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p$.

EXAMPLE 10 Given $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ in a vector space V, let $H = \text{Span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$. Show that H is a subspace of V.

SOLUTION The zero vector is in H, since $\mathbf{0} = 0\mathbf{v}_1 + 0\mathbf{v}_2$. To show that H is closed under vector addition, take two arbitrary vectors in H, say,

$$\mathbf{u} = s_1\mathbf{v}_1 + s_2\mathbf{v}_2 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{w} = t_1\mathbf{v}_1 + t_2\mathbf{v}_2$$

By Axioms 2, 3, and 8 for the vector space V,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w} &= (s_1\mathbf{v}_1 + s_2\mathbf{v}_2) + (t_1\mathbf{v}_1 + t_2\mathbf{v}_2)\\ &= (s_1 + t_1)\mathbf{v}_1 + (s_2 + t_2)\mathbf{v}_2\end{aligned}$$

So $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w}$ is in H. Furthermore, if c is any scalar, then by Axioms 7 and 9,

$$c\mathbf{u} = c(s_1\mathbf{v}_1 + s_2\mathbf{v}_2) = (cs_1)\mathbf{v}_1 + (cs_2)\mathbf{v}_2$$

which shows that $c\mathbf{u}$ is in H and H is closed under scalar multiplication. Thus H is a subspace of V. ■

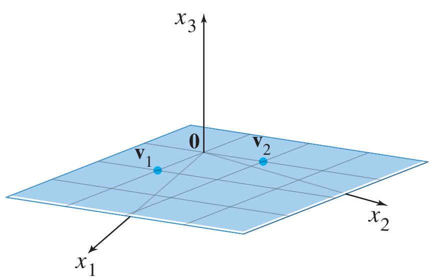


FIGURE 9
An example of a subspace.

In Section 4.5, you will see that every nonzero subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$, other than $\mathbb{R}^3$ itself, is either Span $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ for some linearly independent $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ or Span $\{\mathbf{v}\}$ for $\mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}$. In the first case, the subspace is a plane through the origin; in the second case, it is a line through the origin. (See Figure 9.) It is helpful to keep these geometric pictures in mind, even for an abstract vector space.

The argument in Example 10 can easily be generalized to prove the following theorem.

THEOREM 1 If $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p$ are in a vector space V, then Span $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ is a subspace of V.

We call Span $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ **the subspace spanned** (or **generated**) by $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$. Given any subspace H of V, a **spanning** (or **generating**) **set** for H is a set $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ in H such that $H = \text{Span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$.

The next example shows how to use Theorem 1.

EXAMPLE 11 Let H be the set of all vectors of the form $(a - 3b, b - a, a, b)$, where a and b are arbitrary scalars. That is, let $H = \{(a - 3b, b - a, a, b) : a \text{ and } b \text{ in } \mathbb{R}\}$. Show that H is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$.

SOLUTION Write the vectors in H as column vectors. Then an arbitrary vector in H has the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} a-3b \\ b-a \\ a \\ b \end{bmatrix} = a\underset{\uparrow\atop \mathbf{v}_1}{\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}} + b\underset{\uparrow\atop \mathbf{v}_2}{\begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}}$$

This calculation shows that $H = \text{Span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$, where $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ are the vectors indicated above. Thus H is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$ by Theorem 1. ■

Example 11 illustrates a useful technique of expressing a subspace H as the set of linear combinations of some small collection of vectors. If $H = \text{Span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$, we can think of the vectors $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p$ in the spanning set as "handles" that allow us to hold on to the subspace H. Calculations with the infinitely many vectors in H are often reduced to operations with the finite number of vectors in the spanning set.

EXAMPLE 12 For what value(s) of h will $\mathbf{y}$ be in the subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$ spanned by $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3$, if

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ -4 \\ -7 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} -4 \\ 3 \\ h \end{bmatrix}$$

SOLUTION This question is Practice Problem 2 in Section 1.3, written here with the term *subspace* rather than $\text{Span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$. The solution there shows that $\mathbf{y}$ is in $\text{Span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$ if and only if $h = 5$. That solution is worth reviewing now, along with Exercises 11–16 and 19–21 in Section 1.3. ■

Although many vector spaces in this chapter will be subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^n$, it is important to keep in mind that the abstract theory applies to other vector spaces as well. Vector spaces of functions arise in many applications, and they will receive more attention later.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

1. Show that the set H of all points in $\mathbb{R}^2$ of the form $(3s, 2+5s)$ is not a vector space, by showing that it is not closed under scalar multiplication. (Find a specific vector $\mathbf{u}$ in H and a scalar c such that $c\mathbf{u}$ is not in H.)
2. Let $W = \text{Span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$, where $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p$ are in a vector space V. Show that $\mathbf{v}_k$ is in W for $1 \le k \le p$. [*Hint:* First write an equation that shows that $\mathbf{v}_1$ is in W. Then adjust your notation for the general case.]
3. An $n \times n$ matrix A is said to be symmetric if $A^T = A$. Let S be the set of all 3×3 symmetric matrices. Show that S is a subspace of $M_{3\times 3}$, the vector space of 3×3 matrices.

WEB

4.1 EXERCISES

1. Let V be the first quadrant in the xy-plane; that is, let
$$V = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} : x \ge 0, y \ge 0 \right\}$$
   a. If $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are in V, is $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ in V? Why?
   b. Find a specific vector $\mathbf{u}$ in V and a specific scalar c such that $c\mathbf{u}$ is *not* in V. (This is enough to show that V is *not* a vector space.)
2. Let W be the union of the first and third quadrants in the xy-plane. That is, let $W = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} : xy \ge 0 \right\}$.
   a. If $\mathbf{u}$ is in W and c is any scalar, is $c\mathbf{u}$ in W? Why?

b. Find specific vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in W such that $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ is not in W. This is enough to show that W is *not* a vector space.

3. Let H be the set of points inside and on the unit circle in the xy-plane. That is, let $H = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} : x^2 + y^2 \leq 1 \right\}$. Find a specific example—two vectors or a vector and a scalar—to show that H is not a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^2$.

4. Construct a geometric figure that illustrates why a line in $\mathbb{R}^2$ *not* through the origin is not closed under vector addition.

In Exercises 5–8, determine if the given set is a subspace of $\mathbb{P}_n$ for an appropriate value of n. Justify your answers.

5. All polynomials of the form $\mathbf{p}(t) = at^2$, where a is in $\mathbb{R}$.

6. All polynomials of the form $\mathbf{p}(t) = a + t^2$, where a is in $\mathbb{R}$.

7. All polynomials of degree at most 3, with integers as coefficients.

8. All polynomials in $\mathbb{P}_n$ such that $\mathbf{p}(0) = 0$.

9. Let H be the set of all vectors of the form $\begin{bmatrix} s \\ 3s \\ 2s \end{bmatrix}$. Find a vector $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ such that $H = \text{Span}\,\{\mathbf{v}\}$. Why does this show that H is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$?

10. Let H be the set of all vectors of the form $\begin{bmatrix} 2t \\ 0 \\ -t \end{bmatrix}$. Show that H is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$. (Use the method of Exercise 9.)

11. Let W be the set of all vectors of the form $\begin{bmatrix} 5b + 2c \\ b \\ c \end{bmatrix}$, where b and c are arbitrary. Find vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ such that $W = \text{Span}\,\{\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\}$. Why does this show that W is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$?

12. Let W be the set of all vectors of the form $\begin{bmatrix} s + 3t \\ s - t \\ 2s - t \\ 4t \end{bmatrix}$. Show that W is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$. (Use the method of Exercise 11.)

13. Let $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$.
   a. Is $\mathbf{w}$ in $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$? How many vectors are in $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$?
   b. How many vectors are in Span $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$?
   c. Is $\mathbf{w}$ in the subspace spanned by $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$? Why?

14. Let $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3$ be as in Exercise 13, and let $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}$. Is $\mathbf{w}$ in the subspace spanned by $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$? Why?

In Exercises 15–18, let W be the set of all vectors of the form shown, where a, b, and c represent arbitrary real numbers. In each case, either find a set S of vectors that spans W or give an example to show that W is *not* a vector space.

15. $\begin{bmatrix} 3a + b \\ 4 \\ a - 5b \end{bmatrix}$

16. $\begin{bmatrix} -a + 1 \\ a - 6b \\ 2b + a \end{bmatrix}$

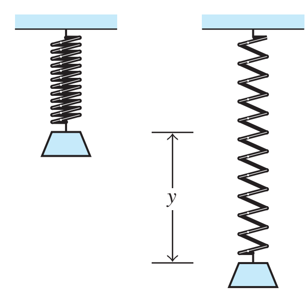
17. $\begin{bmatrix} a - b \\ b - c \\ c - a \\ b \end{bmatrix}$

18. $\begin{bmatrix} 4a + 3b \\ 0 \\ a + b + c \\ c - 2a \end{bmatrix}$

19. If a mass m is placed at the end of a spring, and if the mass is pulled downward and released, the mass–spring system will begin to oscillate. The displacement y of the mass from its resting position is given by a function of the form

$$y(t) = c_1 \cos \omega t + c_2 \sin \omega t \qquad (5)$$

where ω is a constant that depends on the spring and the mass. (See the figure below.) Show that the set of all functions described in (5) (with ω fixed and c_1, c_2 arbitrary) is a vector space.



20. The set of all continuous real-valued functions defined on a closed interval $[a, b]$ in $\mathbb{R}$ is denoted by $C[a, b]$. This set is a subspace of the vector space of all real-valued functions defined on $[a, b]$.
   a. What facts about continuous functions should be proved in order to demonstrate that $C[a, b]$ is indeed a subspace as claimed? (These facts are usually discussed in a calculus class.)
   b. Show that $\{\mathbf{f} \text{ in } C[a, b] : \mathbf{f}(a) = \mathbf{f}(b)\}$ is a subspace of $C[a, b]$.

For fixed positive integers m and n, the set $M_{m \times n}$ of all $m \times n$ matrices is a vector space, under the usual operations of addition of matrices and multiplication by real scalars.

21. Determine if the set H of all matrices of the form $\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & d \end{bmatrix}$ is a subspace of $M_{2\times 2}$.

22. Let F be a fixed 3×2 matrix, and let H be the set of all matrices A in $M_{2\times 4}$ with the property that $FA = 0$ (the zero matrix in $M_{3\times 4}$). Determine if H is a subspace of $M_{2\times 4}$.

In Exercises 23 and 24, mark each statement True or False. Justify each answer.

23. a. If $\mathbf{f}$ is a function in the vector space V of all real-valued functions on $\mathbb{R}$ and if $\mathbf{f}(t) = 0$ for some t, then $\mathbf{f}$ is the zero vector in V.

b. A vector is an arrow in three-dimensional space.

c. A subset H of a vector space V is a subspace of V if the zero vector is in H.

d. A subspace is also a vector space.

e. Analog signals are used in the major control systems for the space shuttle, mentioned in the introduction to the chapter.

24. a. A vector is any element of a vector space.

b. If $\mathbf{u}$ is a vector in a vector space V, then $(-1)\mathbf{u}$ is the same as the negative of $\mathbf{u}$.

c. A vector space is also a subspace.

d. $\mathbb{R}^2$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

e. A subset H of a vector space V is a subspace of V if the following conditions are satisfied: (i) the zero vector of V is in H, (ii) $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ are in H, and (iii) c is a scalar and $c\mathbf{u}$ is in H.

Exercises 25–29 show how the axioms for a vector space V can be used to prove the elementary properties described after the definition of a vector space. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate axiom numbers. Because of Axiom 2, Axioms 4 and 5 imply, respectively, that $\mathbf{0} + \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{u}$ and $-\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$ for all $\mathbf{u}$.

25. Complete the following proof that the zero vector is unique. Suppose that $\mathbf{w}$ in V has the property that $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{w} + \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{u}$ for all $\mathbf{u}$ in V. In particular, $\mathbf{0} + \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0}$. But $\mathbf{0} + \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{w}$, by Axiom ______. Hence $\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0}$.

26. Complete the following proof that $-\mathbf{u}$ is the *unique vector* in V such that $\mathbf{u} + (-\mathbf{u}) = \mathbf{0}$. Suppose that $\mathbf{w}$ satisfies $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0}$. Adding $-\mathbf{u}$ to both sides, we have

$(-\mathbf{u}) + [\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w}] = (-\mathbf{u}) + \mathbf{0}$

$[(-\mathbf{u}) + \mathbf{u}] + \mathbf{w} = (-\mathbf{u}) + \mathbf{0}$ by Axiom ______ (a)

$\mathbf{0} + \mathbf{w} = (-\mathbf{u}) + \mathbf{0}$ by Axiom ______ (b)

$\mathbf{w} = -\mathbf{u}$ by Axiom ______ (c)

27. Fill in the missing axiom numbers in the following proof that $0\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$ for every $\mathbf{u}$ in V.

$0\mathbf{u} = (0 + 0)\mathbf{u} = 0\mathbf{u} + 0\mathbf{u}$ by Axiom ______ (a)

Add the negative of $0\mathbf{u}$ to both sides:

$0\mathbf{u} + (-0\mathbf{u}) = [0\mathbf{u} + 0\mathbf{u}] + (-0\mathbf{u})$

$0\mathbf{u} + (-0\mathbf{u}) = 0\mathbf{u} + [0\mathbf{u} + (-0\mathbf{u})]$ by Axiom ______ (b)

$\mathbf{0} = 0\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{0}$ by Axiom ______ (c)

$\mathbf{0} = 0\mathbf{u}$ by Axiom ______ (d)

28. Fill in the missing axiom numbers in the following proof that $c\mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0}$ for every scalar c.

$c\mathbf{0} = c(\mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0})$ by Axiom ______ (a)

$= c\mathbf{0} + c\mathbf{0}$ by Axiom ______ (b)

Add the negative of $c\mathbf{0}$ to both sides:

$c\mathbf{0} + (-c\mathbf{0}) = [c\mathbf{0} + c\mathbf{0}] + (-c\mathbf{0})$

$c\mathbf{0} + (-c\mathbf{0}) = c\mathbf{0} + [c\mathbf{0} + (-c\mathbf{0})]$ by Axiom ______ (c)

$\mathbf{0} = c\mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0}$ by Axiom ______ (d)

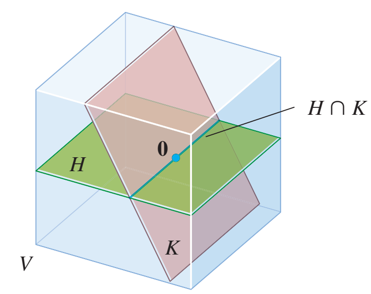
$\mathbf{0} = c\mathbf{0}$ by Axiom ______ (e)

29. Prove that $(-1)\mathbf{u} = -\mathbf{u}$. [*Hint:* Show that $\mathbf{u} + (-1)\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$. Use some axioms and the results of Exercises 26 and 27.]

30. Suppose $c\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$ for some nonzero scalar c. Show that $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$. Mention the axioms or properties you use.

31. Let $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ be vectors in a vector space V, and let H be any subspace of V that contains both $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$. Explain why H also contains Span $\{\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\}$. This shows that Span $\{\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\}$ is the smallest subspace of V that contains both $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$.

32. Let H and K be subspaces of a vector space V. The **intersection** of H and K, written as $H \cap K$, is the set of $\mathbf{v}$ in V that belong to both H and K. Show that $H \cap K$ is a subspace of V. (See the figure.) Give an example in $\mathbb{R}^2$ to show that the union of two subspaces is not, in general, a subspace.



33. Given subspaces H and K of a vector space V, the **sum** of H and K, written as $H + K$, is the set of all vectors in V that can be written as the sum of two vectors, one in H and the other in K; that is,

$$H + K = \{\mathbf{w} : \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} \text{ for some } \mathbf{u} \text{ in } H \text{ and some } \mathbf{v} \text{ in } K\}$$

a. Show that $H + K$ is a subspace of V.

b. Show that H is a subspace of $H + K$ and K is a subspace of $H + K$.

34. Suppose $\mathbf{u}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_p$ and $\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_q$ are vectors in a vector space V, and let

$H = \text{Span}\,\{\mathbf{u}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_p\}$ and $K = \text{Span}\,\{\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_q\}$

Show that $H + K = \text{Span}\,\{\mathbf{u}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_p, \mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_q\}$.

35. [**M**] Show that $\mathbf{w}$ is in the subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$ spanned by $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3$, where

$$\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 9 \\ -4 \\ -4 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ -4 \\ -3 \\ 9 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -4 \\ 3 \\ -2 \\ -8 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} -7 \\ 6 \\ -5 \\ -18 \end{bmatrix}$$

36. [**M**] Determine if $\mathbf{y}$ is in the subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$ spanned by the columns of A, where

$$\mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} -4 \\ -8 \\ 6 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix}, \quad A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -5 & -9 \\ 8 & 7 & -6 \\ -5 & -8 & 3 \\ 2 & -2 & -9 \end{bmatrix}$$

37. [**M**] The vector space $H = \text{Span}\{1, \cos^2 t, \cos^4 t, \cos^6 t\}$ contains at least two interesting functions that will be used in a later exercise:

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = 1 - 8\cos^2 t + 8\cos^4 t$$
$$\mathbf{g}(t) = -1 + 18\cos^2 t - 48\cos^4 t + 32\cos^6 t$$

Study the graph of $\mathbf{f}$ for $0 \le t \le 2\pi$, and guess a simple formula for $\mathbf{f}(t)$. Verify your conjecture by graphing the difference between $1 + \mathbf{f}(t)$ and your formula for $\mathbf{f}(t)$. (Hopefully, you will see the constant function 1.) Repeat for $\mathbf{g}$.

38. [**M**] Repeat Exercise 37 for the functions

$$\mathbf{f}(t) = 3\sin t - 4\sin^3 t$$
$$\mathbf{g}(t) = 1 - 8\sin^2 t + 8\sin^4 t$$
$$\mathbf{h}(t) = 5\sin t - 20\sin^3 t + 16\sin^5 t$$

in the vector space $\text{Span}\{1, \sin t, \sin^2 t, \ldots, \sin^5 t\}$.

SOLUTIONS TO PRACTICE PROBLEMS

1. Take any $\mathbf{u}$ in H—say, $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}$—and take any $c \ne 1$—say, $c = 2$. Then $c\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 14 \end{bmatrix}$. If this is in H, then there is some s such that

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3s \\ 2 + 5s \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 14 \end{bmatrix}$$

That is, $s = 2$ and $s = 12/5$, which is impossible. So $2\mathbf{u}$ is not in H and H is not a vector space.

2. $\mathbf{v}_1 = 1\mathbf{v}_1 + 0\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + 0\mathbf{v}_p$. This expresses $\mathbf{v}_1$ as a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_p$, so $\mathbf{v}_1$ is in W. In general, $\mathbf{v}_k$ is in W because

$$\mathbf{v}_k = 0\mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + 0\mathbf{v}_{k-1} + 1\mathbf{v}_k + 0\mathbf{v}_{k+1} + \cdots + 0\mathbf{v}_p$$

3. The subset S is a subspace of $M_{3\times3}$ since it satisfies all three of the requirements listed in the definition of a subspace:

a. Observe that the $\mathbf{0}$ in $M_{3\times3}$ is the 3×3 zero matrix and since $\mathbf{0}^T = \mathbf{0}$, the matrix $\mathbf{0}$ is symmetric and hence $\mathbf{0}$ is in S.

b. Let A and B in S. Notice that A and B are 3×3 symmetric matrices so $A^T = A$ and $B^T = B$. By the properties of transposes of matrices, $(A + B)^T = A^T + B^T = A + B$. Thus $A + B$ is symmetric and hence $A + B$ is in S.

c. Let A be in S and let c be a scalar. Since A is symmetric, by the properties of symmetric matrices, $(cA)^T = c(A^T) = cA$. Thus cA is also a symmetric matrix and hence cA is in S.

4.2 NULL SPACES, COLUMN SPACES, AND LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS

In applications of linear algebra, subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^n$ usually arise in one of two ways: (1) as the set of all solutions to a system of homogeneous linear equations or (2) as the set of all linear combinations of certain specified vectors. In this section, we compare and contrast these two descriptions of subspaces, allowing us to practice using the concept of a subspace. Actually, as you will soon discover, we have been working with subspaces ever since Section 1.3. The main new feature here is the terminology. The section concludes with a discussion of the kernel and range of a linear transformation.

The Null Space of a Matrix

Consider the following system of homogeneous equations:

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - 3x_2 - 2x_3 &= 0 \\ -5x_1 + 9x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

In matrix form, this system is written as $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, where

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 & -2 \\ -5 & 9 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \tag{2}$$

Recall that the set of all $\mathbf{x}$ that satisfy (1) is called the **solution set** of the system (1). Often it is convenient to relate this set directly to the matrix A and the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. We call the set of $\mathbf{x}$ that satisfy $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ the **null space** of the matrix A.

DEFINITION The **null space** of an $m \times n$ matrix A, written as Nul A, is the set of all solutions of the homogeneous equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. In set notation,

$$\text{Nul } A = \{\mathbf{x} : \mathbf{x} \text{ is in } \mathbb{R}^n \text{ and } A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}\}$$

A more dynamic description of Nul A is the set of all $\mathbf{x}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ that are mapped into the zero vector of $\mathbb{R}^m$ via the linear transformation $\mathbf{x} \mapsto A\mathbf{x}$. See Figure 1.

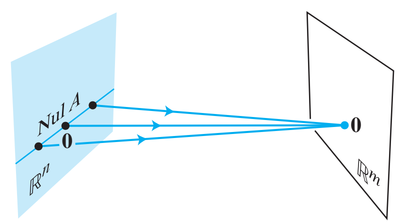


FIGURE 1

EXAMPLE 1 Let A be the matrix in (2) above, and let $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$. Determine if $\mathbf{u}$ belongs to the null space of A.

SOLUTION To test if $\mathbf{u}$ satisfies $A\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$, simply compute

$$A\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 & -2 \\ -5 & 9 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 - 9 + 4 \\ -25 + 27 - 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus $\mathbf{u}$ is in Nul A. ■

The term *space* in *null space* is appropriate because the null space of a matrix is a vector space, as shown in the next theorem.

THEOREM 2 The null space of an $m \times n$ matrix A is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$. Equivalently, the set of all solutions to a system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ of m homogeneous linear equations in n unknowns is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$.

PROOF Certainly Nul A is a subset of $\mathbb{R}^n$ because A has n columns. We must show that Nul A satisfies the three properties of a subspace. Of course, $\mathbf{0}$ is in Nul A. Next, let $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ represent any two vectors in Nul A. Then

$$A\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0} \quad \text{and} \quad A\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$$

To show that $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ is in Nul A, we must show that $A(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0}$. Using a property of matrix multiplication, compute

$$A(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) = A\mathbf{u} + A\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0}$$

Thus $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ is in Nul A, and Nul A is closed under vector addition. Finally, if c is any scalar, then

$$A(c\mathbf{u}) = c(A\mathbf{u}) = c(\mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}$$

which shows that $c\mathbf{u}$ is in Nul A. Thus Nul A is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$. ■

EXAMPLE 2 Let H be the set of all vectors in $\mathbb{R}^4$ whose coordinates a, b, c, d satisfy the equations $a - 2b + 5c = d$ and $c - a = b$. Show that H is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$.

SOLUTION Rearrange the equations that describe the elements of H, and note that H is the set of all solutions of the following system of homogeneous linear equations:

$$\begin{aligned} a - 2b + 5c - d &= 0 \\ -a - b + c &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

By Theorem 2, H is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$. ■

It is important that the linear equations defining the set H are homogeneous. Otherwise, the set of solutions will definitely *not* be a subspace (because the zero vector is not a solution of a nonhomogeneous system). Also, in some cases, the set of solutions could be empty.

An Explicit Description of Nul A

There is no obvious relation between vectors in Nul A and the entries in A. We say that Nul A is defined *implicitly*, because it is defined by a condition that must be checked. No explicit list or description of the elements in Nul A is given. However, *solving* the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ amounts to producing an *explicit* description of Nul A. The next example reviews the procedure from Section 1.5.

EXAMPLE 3 Find a spanning set for the null space of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 6 & -1 & 1 & -7 \\ 1 & -2 & 2 & 3 & -1 \\ 2 & -4 & 5 & 8 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$$

SOLUTION The first step is to find the general solution of $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ in terms of free variables. Row reduce the augmented matrix $[\,A \quad \mathbf{0}\,]$ to *reduced* echelon form in order to write the basic variables in terms of the free variables:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 0 & -1 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \qquad \begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 - x_4 + 3x_5 &= 0 \\ x_3 + 2x_4 - 2x_5 &= 0 \\ 0 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

The general solution is $x_1 = 2x_2 + x_4 - 3x_5$, $x_3 = -2x_4 + 2x_5$, with x_2, x_4, and x_5 free. Next, decompose the vector giving the general solution into a linear combination of vectors where *the weights are the free variables*. That is,

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2x_2 + x_4 - 3x_5 \\ x_2 \\ -2x_4 + 2x_5 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{bmatrix} = x_2 \underset{\uparrow \atop \mathbf{u}}{\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}} + x_4 \underset{\uparrow \atop \mathbf{v}}{\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}} + x_5 \underset{\uparrow \atop \mathbf{w}}{\begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}}$$

$$= x_2\mathbf{u} + x_4\mathbf{v} + x_5\mathbf{w} \tag{3}$$

Every linear combination of $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ is an element of Nul A and vice versa. Thus $\{\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\}$ is a spanning set for Nul A. ■

Two points should be made about the solution of Example 3 that apply to all problems of this type where Nul A contains nonzero vectors. We will use these facts later.

1. The spanning set produced by the method in Example 3 is automatically linearly independent because the free variables are the weights on the spanning vectors. For instance, look at the 2nd, 4th, and 5th entries in the solution vector in (3) and note that $x_2\mathbf{u} + x_4\mathbf{v} + x_5\mathbf{w}$ can be $\mathbf{0}$ only if the weights x_2, x_4, and x_5 are all zero.
2. When Nul A contains nonzero vectors, the number of vectors in the spanning set for Nul A equals the number of free variables in the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$.

The Column Space of a Matrix

Another important subspace associated with a matrix is its column space. Unlike the null space, the column space is defined explicitly via linear combinations.

DEFINITION

The **column space** of an $m \times n$ matrix A, written as Col A, is the set of all linear combinations of the columns of A. If $A = [\,\mathbf{a}_1 \;\; \cdots \;\; \mathbf{a}_n\,]$, then

$$\text{Col } A = \text{Span}\,\{\mathbf{a}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{a}_n\}$$

Since Span $\{\mathbf{a}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{a}_n\}$ is a subspace, by Theorem 1, the next theorem follows from the definition of Col A and the fact that the columns of A are in $\mathbb{R}^m$.

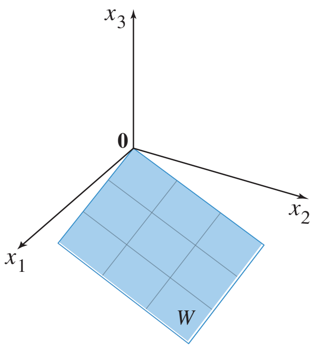
THEOREM 3

The column space of an $m \times n$ matrix A is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^m$.

Note that a typical vector in Col A can be written as $A\mathbf{x}$ for some $\mathbf{x}$ because the notation $A\mathbf{x}$ stands for a linear combination of the columns of A. That is,

$$\boxed{\text{Col } A = \{\mathbf{b} : \mathbf{b} = A\mathbf{x} \text{ for some } \mathbf{x} \text{ in } \mathbb{R}^n\}}$$

The notation $A\mathbf{x}$ for vectors in Col A also shows that Col A is the *range* of the linear transformation $\mathbf{x} \mapsto A\mathbf{x}$. We will return to this point of view at the end of the section.



EXAMPLE 4 Find a matrix A such that $W = \text{Col } A$.

$$W = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 6a - b \\ a + b \\ -7a \end{bmatrix} : a, b \text{ in } \mathbb{R} \right\}$$

SOLUTION First, write W as a set of linear combinations.

$$W = \left\{ a\begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 1 \\ -7 \end{bmatrix} + b\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} : a, b \text{ in } \mathbb{R} \right\} = \text{Span}\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 1 \\ -7 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

Second, use the vectors in the spanning set as the columns of A. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -7 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$.

Then $W = \text{Col } A$, as desired. ∎

Recall from Theorem 4 in Section 1.4 that the columns of A span $\mathbb{R}^m$ if and only if the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has a solution for each $\mathbf{b}$. We can restate this fact as follows:

> The column space of an $m \times n$ matrix A is all of $\mathbb{R}^m$ if and only if the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has a solution for each $\mathbf{b}$ in $\mathbb{R}^m$.

The Contrast Between Nul A and Col A

It is natural to wonder how the null space and column space of a matrix are related. In fact, the two spaces are quite dissimilar, as Examples 5–7 will show. Nevertheless, a surprising connection between the null space and column space will emerge in Section 4.6, after more theory is available.

EXAMPLE 5 Let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 & -2 & 1 \\ -2 & -5 & 7 & 3 \\ 3 & 7 & -8 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

a. If the column space of A is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^k$, what is k?

b. If the null space of A is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^k$, what is k?

SOLUTION

a. The columns of A each have three entries, so Col A is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^k$, where $k = 3$.

b. A vector $\mathbf{x}$ such that $A\mathbf{x}$ is defined must have four entries, so Nul A is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^k$, where $k = 4$. ∎

When a matrix is not square, as in Example 5, the vectors in Nul A and Col A live in entirely different "universes." For example, no linear combination of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ can produce a vector in $\mathbb{R}^4$. When A is square, Nul A and Col A do have the zero vector in common, and in special cases it is possible that some nonzero vectors belong to both Nul A and Col A.

EXAMPLE 6 With A as in Example 5, find a nonzero vector in Col A and a nonzero vector in Nul A.

SOLUTION It is easy to find a vector in Col A. Any column of A will do, say, $\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$.

To find a nonzero vector in Nul A, row reduce the augmented matrix $[\,A \quad \mathbf{0}\,]$ and obtain

$$[\,A \quad \mathbf{0}\,] \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 9 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -5 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus, if $\mathbf{x}$ satisfies $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, then $x_1 = -9x_3$, $x_2 = 5x_3$, $x_4 = 0$, and x_3 is free. Assigning a nonzero value to x_3—say, $x_3 = 1$—we obtain a vector in Nul A, namely, $\mathbf{x} = (-9, 5, 1, 0)$. ■

EXAMPLE 7 With A as in Example 5, let $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$.

a. Determine if $\mathbf{u}$ is in Nul A. Could $\mathbf{u}$ be in Col A?

b. Determine if $\mathbf{v}$ is in Col A. Could $\mathbf{v}$ be in Nul A?

SOLUTION

a. An explicit description of Nul A is not needed here. Simply compute the product $A\mathbf{u}$.

$$A\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 & -2 & 1 \\ -2 & -5 & 7 & 3 \\ 3 & 7 & -8 & 6 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -3 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} \neq \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Obviously, $\mathbf{u}$ is *not* a solution of $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, so $\mathbf{u}$ is not in Nul A. Also, with four entries, $\mathbf{u}$ could not possibly be in Col A, since Col A is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

b. Reduce $[\,A \quad \mathbf{v}\,]$ to an echelon form.

$$[\,A \quad \mathbf{v}\,] = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 & -2 & 1 & 3 \\ -2 & -5 & 7 & 3 & -1 \\ 3 & 7 & -8 & 6 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 & -2 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & -5 & -4 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 17 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

At this point, it is clear that the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{v}$ is consistent, so $\mathbf{v}$ is in Col A. With only three entries, $\mathbf{v}$ could not possibly be in Nul A, since Nul A is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^4$. ■

The table on page 206 summarizes what we have learned about Nul A and Col A. Item 8 is a restatement of Theorems 11 and 12(a) in Section 1.9.

Kernel and Range of a Linear Transformation

Subspaces of vector spaces other than $\mathbb{R}^n$ are often described in terms of a linear transformation instead of a matrix. To make this precise, we generalize the definition given in Section 1.8.

Contrast Between Nul A and Col A for an m x n Matrix A

Nul A	Col A
1. Nul A is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$.	**1**. Col A is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^m$.
2. Nul A is implicitly defined; that is, you are given only a condition ($A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$) that vectors in Nul A must satisfy.	**2**. Col A is explicitly defined; that is, you are told how to build vectors in Col A.
3. It takes time to find vectors in Nul A. Row operations on $[\, A \quad \mathbf{0} \,]$ are required.	**3**. It is easy to find vectors in Col A. The columns of A are displayed; others are formed from them.
4. There is no obvious relation between Nul A and the entries in A.	**4**. There is an obvious relation between Col A and the entries in A, since each column of A is in Col A.
5. A typical vector $\mathbf{v}$ in Nul A has the property that $A\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$.	**5**. A typical vector $\mathbf{v}$ in Col A has the property that the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{v}$ is consistent.
6. Given a specific vector $\mathbf{v}$, it is easy to tell if $\mathbf{v}$ is in Nul A. Just compute $A\mathbf{v}$.	**6**. Given a specific vector $\mathbf{v}$, it may take time to tell if $\mathbf{v}$ is in Col A. Row operations on $[\, A \quad \mathbf{v} \,]$ are required.
7. Nul $A = \{\mathbf{0}\}$ if and only if the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ has only the trivial solution.	**7**. Col $A = \mathbb{R}^m$ if and only if the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has a solution for every $\mathbf{b}$ in $\mathbb{R}^m$.
8. Nul $A = \{\mathbf{0}\}$ if and only if the linear transformation $\mathbf{x} \mapsto A\mathbf{x}$ is one-to-one.	**8**. Col $A = \mathbb{R}^m$ if and only if the linear transformation $\mathbf{x} \mapsto A\mathbf{x}$ maps $\mathbb{R}^n$ *onto* $\mathbb{R}^m$.

DEFINITION

A **linear transformation** T from a vector space V into a vector space W is a rule that assigns to each vector $\mathbf{x}$ in V a unique vector $T(\mathbf{x})$ in W, such that

(i) $T(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) = T(\mathbf{u}) + T(\mathbf{v})$ for all $\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}$ in V, and

(ii) $T(c\mathbf{u}) = cT(\mathbf{u})$ for all $\mathbf{u}$ in V and all scalars c.

The **kernel** (or **null space**) of such a T is the set of all $\mathbf{u}$ in V such that $T(\mathbf{u}) = \mathbf{0}$ (the zero vector in W). The **range** of T is the set of all vectors in W of the form $T(\mathbf{x})$ for some $\mathbf{x}$ in V. If T happens to arise as a matrix transformation—say, $T(\mathbf{x}) = A\mathbf{x}$ for some matrix A—then the kernel and the range of T are just the null space and the column space of A, as defined earlier.

It is not difficult to show that the kernel of T is a subspace of V. The proof is essentially the same as the one for Theorem 2. Also, the range of T is a subspace of W. See Figure 2 and Exercise 30.

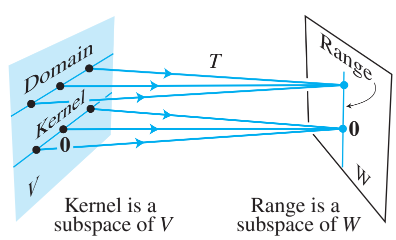


FIGURE 2 Subspaces associated with a linear transformation.

In applications, a subspace usually arises as either the kernel or the range of an appropriate linear transformation. For instance, the set of all solutions of a homogeneous linear differential equation turns out to be the kernel of a linear transformation.

Typically, such a linear transformation is described in terms of one or more derivatives of a function. To explain this in any detail would take us too far afield at this point. So we consider only two examples. The first explains why the operation of differentiation is a linear transformation.

EXAMPLE 8 (Calculus required) Let V be the vector space of all real-valued functions f defined on an interval $[a, b]$ with the property that they are differentiable and their derivatives are continuous functions on $[a, b]$. Let W be the vector space $C[a, b]$ of all continuous functions on $[a, b]$, and let $D : V \to W$ be the transformation that changes f in V into its derivative f'. In calculus, two simple differentiation rules are

$$D(f + g) = D(f) + D(g) \quad \text{and} \quad D(cf) = cD(f)$$

That is, D is a linear transformation. It can be shown that the kernel of D is the set of constant functions on $[a, b]$ and the range of D is the set W of all continuous functions on $[a, b]$. ■

EXAMPLE 9 (Calculus required) The differential equation

$$y'' + \omega^2 y = 0 \tag{4}$$

where ω is a constant, is used to describe a variety of physical systems, such as the vibration of a weighted spring, the movement of a pendulum, and the voltage in an inductance-capacitance electrical circuit. The set of solutions of (4) is precisely the kernel of the linear transformation that maps a function $y = f(t)$ into the function $f''(t) + \omega^2 f(t)$. Finding an explicit description of this vector space is a problem in differential equations. The solution set turns out to be the space described in Exercise 19 in Section 4.1. ■

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

1. Let $W = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{bmatrix} : a - 3b - c = 0 \right\}$. Show in two different ways that W is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$. (Use two theorems.)
2. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 7 & -3 & 5 \\ -4 & 1 & -5 \\ -5 & 2 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 7 \\ 6 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$. Suppose you know that the equations $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{v}$ and $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{w}$ are both consistent. What can you say about the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}$?
3. Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix. If Col A = Nul A, show that Nul $A^2 = \mathbb{R}^n$.

4.2 EXERCISES

1. Determine if $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ -4 \end{bmatrix}$ is in Nul A, where

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -5 & -3 \\ 6 & -2 & 0 \\ -8 & 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

2. Determine if $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ -3 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$ is in Nul A, where

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 21 & 19 \\ 13 & 23 & 2 \\ 8 & 14 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

In Exercises 3–6, find an explicit description of Nul A by listing vectors that span the null space.

3. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 5 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$

4. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -6 & 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

5. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 0 & 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -9 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

6. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 5 & -4 & -3 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 7–14, either use an appropriate theorem to show that the given set, W, is a vector space, or find a specific example to the contrary.

7. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{bmatrix} : a + b + c = 2 \right\}$

8. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} r \\ s \\ t \end{bmatrix} : 5r - 1 = s + 2t \right\}$

9. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \\ d \end{bmatrix} : \begin{matrix} a - 2b = 4c \\ 2a = c + 3d \end{matrix} \right\}$

10. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \\ d \end{bmatrix} : \begin{matrix} a + 3b = c \\ b + c + a = d \end{matrix} \right\}$

11. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} b - 2d \\ 5 + d \\ b + 3d \\ d \end{bmatrix} : b, d \text{ real} \right\}$

12. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} b - 5d \\ 2b \\ 2d + 1 \\ d \end{bmatrix} : b, d \text{ real} \right\}$

13. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} c - 6d \\ d \\ c \end{bmatrix} : c, d \text{ real} \right\}$

14. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} -a + 2b \\ a - 2b \\ 3a - 6b \end{bmatrix} : a, b \text{ real} \right\}$

In Exercises 15 and 16, find A such that the given set is Col A.

15. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 2s + 3t \\ r + s - 2t \\ 4r + s \\ 3r - s - t \end{bmatrix} : r, s, t \text{ real} \right\}$

16. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} b - c \\ 2b + c + d \\ 5c - 4d \\ d \end{bmatrix} : b, c, d \text{ real} \right\}$

For the matrices in Exercises 17–20, (a) find k such that Nul A is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^k$, and (b) find k such that Col A is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^k$.

17. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -6 \\ -1 & 3 \\ -4 & 12 \\ 3 & -9 \end{bmatrix}$

18. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 7 & -2 & 0 \\ -2 & 0 & -5 \\ 0 & -5 & 7 \\ -5 & 7 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$

19. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 5 & -2 & 6 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

20. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 & 9 & 0 & -5 \end{bmatrix}$

21. With A as in Exercise 17, find a nonzero vector in Nul A and a nonzero vector in Col A.

22. With A as in Exercise 3, find a nonzero vector in Nul A and a nonzero vector in Col A.

23. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} -6 & 12 \\ -3 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$. Determine if $\mathbf{w}$ is in Col A. Is $\mathbf{w}$ in Nul A?

24. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} -8 & -2 & -9 \\ 6 & 4 & 8 \\ 4 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$. Determine if $\mathbf{w}$ is in Col A. Is $\mathbf{w}$ in Nul A?

In Exercises 25 and 26, A denotes an $m \times n$ matrix. Mark each statement True or False. Justify each answer.

25. a. The null space of A is the solution set of the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$.
    b. The null space of an $m \times n$ matrix is in $\mathbb{R}^m$.
    c. The column space of A is the range of the mapping $\mathbf{x} \mapsto A\mathbf{x}$.
    d. If the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ is consistent, then Col A is $\mathbb{R}^m$.
    e. The kernel of a linear transformation is a vector space.
    f. Col A is the set of all vectors that can be written as $A\mathbf{x}$ for some $\mathbf{x}$.

26. a. A null space is a vector space.
    b. The column space of an $m \times n$ matrix is in $\mathbb{R}^m$.
    c. Col A is the set of all solutions of $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$.
    d. Nul A is the kernel of the mapping $\mathbf{x} \mapsto A\mathbf{x}$.
    e. The range of a linear transformation is a vector space.
    f. The set of all solutions of a homogeneous linear differential equation is the kernel of a linear transformation.

27. It can be shown that a solution of the system below is $x_1 = 3$, $x_2 = 2$, and $x_3 = -1$. Use this fact and the theory from this section to explain why another solution is $x_1 = 30$, $x_2 = 20$, and $x_3 = -10$. (Observe how the solutions are related, but make no other calculations.)

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - 3x_2 - 3x_3 &= 0 \\ -2x_1 + 4x_2 + 2x_3 &= 0 \\ -x_1 + 5x_2 + 7x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

28. Consider the following two systems of equations:

$$\begin{aligned} 5x_1 + x_2 - 3x_3 &= 0 \\ -9x_1 + 2x_2 + 5x_3 &= 1 \\ 4x_1 + x_2 - 6x_3 &= 9 \end{aligned} \qquad \begin{aligned} 5x_1 + x_2 - 3x_3 &= 0 \\ -9x_1 + 2x_2 + 5x_3 &= 5 \\ 4x_1 + x_2 - 6x_3 &= 45 \end{aligned}$$

It can be shown that the first system has a solution. Use this fact and the theory from this section to explain why the second system must also have a solution. (Make no row operations.)

29. Prove Theorem 3 as follows: Given an $m \times n$ matrix A, an element in Col A has the form $A\mathbf{x}$ for some $\mathbf{x}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Let $A\mathbf{x}$ and $A\mathbf{w}$ represent any two vectors in Col A.

a. Explain why the zero vector is in Col A.

b. Show that the vector $A\mathbf{x} + A\mathbf{w}$ is in Col A.

c. Given a scalar c, show that $c(A\mathbf{x})$ is in Col A.

30. Let $T : V \to W$ be a linear transformation from a vector space V into a vector space W. Prove that the range of T is a subspace of W. [*Hint:* Typical elements of the range have the form $T(\mathbf{x})$ and $T(\mathbf{w})$ for some $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w}$ in V.]

31. Define $T : \mathbb{P}_2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ by $T(\mathbf{p}) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{p}(0) \\ \mathbf{p}(1) \end{bmatrix}$. For instance, if $\mathbf{p}(t) = 3 + 5t + 7t^2$, then $T(\mathbf{p}) = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 15 \end{bmatrix}$.

a. Show that T is a linear transformation. [*Hint:* For arbitrary polynomials $\mathbf{p}$, $\mathbf{q}$ in $\mathbb{P}_2$, compute $T(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{q})$ and $T(c\mathbf{p})$.]

b. Find a polynomial $\mathbf{p}$ in $\mathbb{P}_2$ that spans the kernel of T, and describe the range of T.

32. Define a linear transformation $T : \mathbb{P}_2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ by $T(\mathbf{p}) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{p}(0) \\ \mathbf{p}(0) \end{bmatrix}$. Find polynomials $\mathbf{p}_1$ and $\mathbf{p}_2$ in $\mathbb{P}_2$ that span the kernel of T, and describe the range of T.

33. Let $M_{2\times 2}$ be the vector space of all 2×2 matrices, and define $T : M_{2\times 2} \to M_{2\times 2}$ by $T(A) = A + A^T$, where $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$.

a. Show that T is a linear transformation.

b. Let B be any element of $M_{2\times 2}$ such that $B^T = B$. Find an A in $M_{2\times 2}$ such that $T(A) = B$.

c. Show that the range of T is the set of B in $M_{2\times 2}$ with the property that $B^T = B$.

d. Describe the kernel of T.

34. (*Calculus required*) Define $T : C[0,1] \to C[0,1]$ as follows: For $\mathbf{f}$ in $C[0,1]$, let $T(\mathbf{f})$ be the antiderivative $\mathbf{F}$ of $\mathbf{f}$ such that $\mathbf{F}(0) = 0$. Show that T is a linear transformation, and describe the kernel of T. (See the notation in Exercise 20 of Section 4.1.)

35. Let V and W be vector spaces, and let $T : V \to W$ be a linear transformation. Given a subspace U of V, let $T(U)$ denote the set of all images of the form $T(\mathbf{x})$, where $\mathbf{x}$ is in U. Show that $T(U)$ is a subspace of W.

36. Given $T : V \to W$ as in Exercise 35, and given a subspace Z of W, let U be the set of all $\mathbf{x}$ in V such that $T(\mathbf{x})$ is in Z. Show that U is a subspace of V.

37. [**M**] Determine whether $\mathbf{w}$ is in the column space of A, the null space of A, or both, where

$$\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}, \quad A = \begin{bmatrix} 7 & 6 & -4 & 1 \\ -5 & -1 & 0 & -2 \\ 9 & -11 & 7 & -3 \\ 19 & -9 & 7 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

38. [**M**] Determine whether $\mathbf{w}$ is in the column space of A, the null space of A, or both, where

$$\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad A = \begin{bmatrix} -8 & 5 & -2 & 0 \\ -5 & 2 & 1 & -2 \\ 10 & -8 & 6 & -3 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

39. [**M**] Let $\mathbf{a}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{a}_5$ denote the columns of the matrix A, where

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 1 & 2 & 2 & 0 \\ 3 & 3 & 2 & -1 & -12 \\ 8 & 4 & 4 & -5 & 12 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & -2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = [\,\mathbf{a}_1 \quad \mathbf{a}_2 \quad \mathbf{a}_4\,]$$

a. Explain why $\mathbf{a}_3$ and $\mathbf{a}_5$ are in the column space of B.

b. Find a set of vectors that spans Nul A.

c. Let $T : \mathbb{R}^5 \to \mathbb{R}^4$ be defined by $T(\mathbf{x}) = A\mathbf{x}$. Explain why T is neither one-to-one nor onto.

40. [**M**] Let $H = \text{Span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ and $K = \text{Span}\{\mathbf{v}_3, \mathbf{v}_4\}$, where

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ 8 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v}_4 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -12 \\ -28 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Then H and K are subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^3$. In fact, H and K are planes in $\mathbb{R}^3$ through the origin, and they intersect in a line through $\mathbf{0}$. Find a nonzero vector $\mathbf{w}$ that generates that line. [*Hint:* $\mathbf{w}$ can be written as $c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2$ and also as $c_3\mathbf{v}_3 + c_4\mathbf{v}_4$. To build $\mathbf{w}$, solve the equation $c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 = c_3\mathbf{v}_3 + c_4\mathbf{v}_4$ for the unknown c_j's.]

SG Mastering: Vector Space, Subspace, Col A, and Nul A 4–6

SOLUTIONS TO PRACTICE PROBLEMS

1. *First method:* W is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$ by Theorem 2 because W is the set of all solutions to a system of homogeneous linear equations (where the system has only one equation). Equivalently, W is the null space of the 1×3 matrix $A = [\,1 \quad -3 \quad -1\,]$.

Second method: Solve the equation $a - 3b - c = 0$ for the leading variable a in terms of the free variables b and c. Any solution has the form $\begin{bmatrix} 3b+c \\ b \\ c \end{bmatrix}$, where b and c are arbitrary, and

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3b+c \\ b \\ c \end{bmatrix} = b\underset{\substack{\uparrow \\ \mathbf{v}_1}}{\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}} + c\underset{\substack{\uparrow \\ \mathbf{v}_2}}{\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}}$$

This calculation shows that $W = \text{Span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$. Thus W is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$ by Theorem 1. We could also solve the equation $a - 3b - c = 0$ for b or c and get alternative descriptions of W as a set of linear combinations of two vectors.

2. Both $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$ are in Col A. Since Col A is a vector space, $\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}$ must be in Col A. That is, the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}$ is consistent.
3. Let $\mathbf{x}$ be any vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Notice $A\mathbf{x}$ is in Col A, since it is a linear combination of the columns of A. Since Col A = Nul A, the vector $A\mathbf{x}$ is also in Nul A. Hence $A^2\mathbf{x} = A(A\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{0}$ establishing that every vector $\mathbf{x}$ from $\mathbb{R}^n$ is in Nul A^2.

4.3 LINEARLY INDEPENDENT SETS; BASES

In this section we identify and study the subsets that span a vector space V or a subspace H as "efficiently" as possible. The key idea is that of linear independence, defined as in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

An indexed set of vectors $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ in V is said to be **linearly independent** if the vector equation

$$c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_p\mathbf{v}_p = \mathbf{0} \tag{1}$$

has *only* the trivial solution, $c_1 = 0, \dots, c_p = 0$.[1]

The set $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ is said to be **linearly dependent** if (1) has a nontrivial solution, that is, if there are some weights, $c_1, \dots, c_p$, *not all zero*, such that (1) holds. In such a case, (1) is called a **linear dependence relation** among $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p$.

Just as in $\mathbb{R}^n$, a set containing a single vector $\mathbf{v}$ is linearly independent if and only if $\mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}$. Also, a set of two vectors is linearly dependent if and only if one of the vectors is a multiple of the other. And any set containing the zero vector is linearly dependent. The following theorem has the same proof as Theorem 7 in Section 1.7.

THEOREM 4

An indexed set $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ of two or more vectors, with $\mathbf{v}_1 \neq \mathbf{0}$, is linearly dependent if and only if some $\mathbf{v}_j$ (with $j > 1$) is a linear combination of the preceding vectors, $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_{j-1}$.

The main difference between linear dependence in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and in a general vector space is that when the vectors are not n-tuples, the homogeneous equation (1) usually cannot be written as a system of n linear equations. That is, the vectors cannot be made into the columns of a matrix A in order to study the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. We must rely instead on the definition of linear dependence and on Theorem 4.

[1] It is convenient to use $c_1, \dots, c_p$ in (1) for the scalars instead of $x_1, \dots, x_p$, as we did in Chapter 1.

EXAMPLE 1 Let $\mathbf{p}_1(t) = 1$, $\mathbf{p}_2(t) = t$, and $\mathbf{p}_3(t) = 4 - t$. Then $\{\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_2, \mathbf{p}_3\}$ is linearly dependent in $\mathbb{P}$ because $\mathbf{p}_3 = 4\mathbf{p}_1 - \mathbf{p}_2$. ■

EXAMPLE 2 The set $\{\sin t, \cos t\}$ is linearly independent in $C[0, 1]$, the space of all continuous functions on $0 \le t \le 1$, because $\sin t$ and $\cos t$ are not multiples of one another *as vectors in* $C[0, 1]$. That is, there is no scalar c such that $\cos t = c \cdot \sin t$ for all t in $[0, 1]$. (Look at the graphs of $\sin t$ and $\cos t$.) However, $\{\sin t \cos t, \sin 2t\}$ is linearly dependent because of the identity: $\sin 2t = 2 \sin t \cos t$, for all t. ■

DEFINITION

Let H be a subspace of a vector space V. An indexed set of vectors $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{b}_p\}$ in V is a **basis** for H if

(i) $\mathcal{B}$ is a linearly independent set, and

(ii) the subspace spanned by $\mathcal{B}$ coincides with H; that is,

$$H = \text{Span}\,\{\mathbf{b}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{b}_p\}$$

The definition of a basis applies to the case when $H = V$, because any vector space is a subspace of itself. Thus a basis of V is a linearly independent set that spans V. Observe that when $H \ne V$, condition (ii) includes the requirement that each of the vectors $\mathbf{b}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{b}_p$ must belong to H, because Span $\{\mathbf{b}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{b}_p\}$ contains $\mathbf{b}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{b}_p$, as shown in Section 4.1.

EXAMPLE 3 Let A be an invertible $n \times n$ matrix—say, $A = [\,\mathbf{a}_1 \ \cdots \ \mathbf{a}_n\,]$. Then the columns of A form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$ because they are linearly independent and they span $\mathbb{R}^n$, by the Invertible Matrix Theorem. ■

EXAMPLE 4 Let $\mathbf{e}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{e}_n$ be the columns of the $n \times n$ identity matrix, I_n. That is,

$$\mathbf{e}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{e}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \ldots, \quad \mathbf{e}_n = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

The set $\{\mathbf{e}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{e}_n\}$ is called the **standard basis** for $\mathbb{R}^n$ (Figure 1). ■

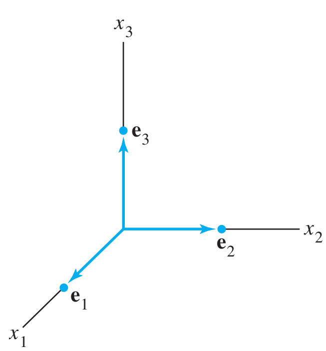


FIGURE 1
The standard basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$.

EXAMPLE 5 Let $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 0 \\ -6 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -4 \\ 1 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$. Determine if $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$ is a basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$.

SOLUTION Since there are exactly three vectors here in $\mathbb{R}^3$, we can use any of several methods to determine if the matrix $A = [\,\mathbf{v}_1 \ \mathbf{v}_2 \ \mathbf{v}_3\,]$ is invertible. For instance, two row replacements reveal that A has three pivot positions. Thus A is invertible. As in Example 3, the columns of A form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$. ■

EXAMPLE 6 Let $S = \{1, t, t^2, \ldots, t^n\}$. Verify that S is a basis for $\mathbb{P}_n$. This basis is called the **standard basis** for $\mathbb{P}_n$.

SOLUTION Certainly S spans $\mathbb{P}_n$. To show that S is linearly independent, suppose that $c_0, \ldots, c_n$ satisfy

$$c_0 \cdot 1 + c_1 t + c_2 t^2 + \cdots + c_n t^n = \mathbf{0}(t) \qquad (2)$$

This equality means that the polynomial on the left has the same values as the zero polynomial on the right. A fundamental theorem in algebra says that the only polynomial in $\mathbb{P}_n$ with more than n zeros is the zero polynomial. That is, equation (2) holds for all t only if $c_0 = \cdots = c_n = 0$. This proves that S is linearly independent and hence is a basis for $\mathbb{P}_n$. See Figure 2. ■

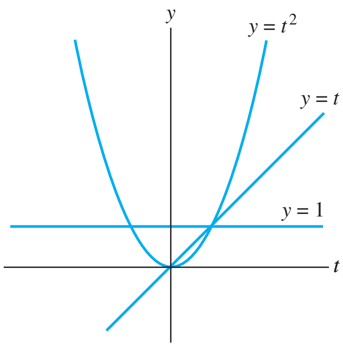


FIGURE 2
The standard basis for $\mathbb{P}_2$.

Problems involving linear independence and spanning in $\mathbb{P}_n$ are handled best by a technique to be discussed in Section 4.4.

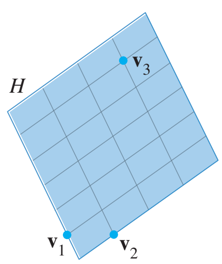
The Spanning Set Theorem

As we will see, a basis is an "efficient" spanning set that contains no unnecessary vectors. In fact, a basis can be constructed from a spanning set by discarding unneeded vectors.

EXAMPLE 7 Let

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 16 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad H = \text{Span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}.$$

Note that $\mathbf{v}_3 = 5\mathbf{v}_1 + 3\mathbf{v}_2$, and show that Span $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$ = Span $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$. Then find a basis for the subspace H.



SOLUTION Every vector in Span $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ belongs to H because

$$c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + 0\mathbf{v}_3$$

Now let $\mathbf{x}$ be any vector in H—say, $\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + c_3\mathbf{v}_3$. Since $\mathbf{v}_3 = 5\mathbf{v}_1 + 3\mathbf{v}_2$, we may substitute

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x} &= c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + c_3(5\mathbf{v}_1 + 3\mathbf{v}_2) \\ &= (c_1 + 5c_3)\mathbf{v}_1 + (c_2 + 3c_3)\mathbf{v}_2 \end{aligned}$$

Thus $\mathbf{x}$ is in Span $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$, so every vector in H already belongs to Span $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$. We conclude that H and Span $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ are actually the same set of vectors. It follows that $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ is a basis of H since $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ is obviously linearly independent. ■

The next theorem generalizes Example 7.

THEOREM 5

The Spanning Set Theorem

Let $S = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ be a set in V, and let $H = \text{Span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$.

a. If one of the vectors in S—say, $\mathbf{v}_k$—is a linear combination of the remaining vectors in S, then the set formed from S by removing $\mathbf{v}_k$ still spans H.

b. If $H \neq \{\mathbf{0}\}$, some subset of S is a basis for H.

PROOF

a. By rearranging the list of vectors in S, if necessary, we may suppose that $\mathbf{v}_p$ is a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{p-1}$—say,

$$\mathbf{v}_p = a_1\mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + a_{p-1}\mathbf{v}_{p-1} \tag{3}$$

Given any $\mathbf{x}$ in H, we may write

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + c_{p-1}\mathbf{v}_{p-1} + c_p\mathbf{v}_p \tag{4}$$

for suitable scalars $c_1, \ldots, c_p$. Substituting the expression for $\mathbf{v}_p$ from (3) into (4), it is easy to see that $\mathbf{x}$ is a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{p-1}$. Thus $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{p-1}\}$ spans H, because $\mathbf{x}$ was an arbitrary element of H.

b. If the original spanning set S is linearly independent, then it is already a basis for H. Otherwise, one of the vectors in S depends on the others and can be deleted, by part (a). So long as there are two or more vectors in the spanning set, we can repeat this process until the spanning set is linearly independent and hence is a basis for H. If the spanning set is eventually reduced to one vector, that vector will be nonzero (and hence linearly independent) because $H \neq \{\mathbf{0}\}$. ■

Bases for Nul A and Col A

We already know how to find vectors that span the null space of a matrix A. The discussion in Section 4.2 pointed out that our method always produces a linearly independent set when Nul A contains nonzero vectors. So, in this case, that method produces a *basis* for Nul A.

The next two examples describe a simple algorithm for finding a basis for the column space.

EXAMPLE 8 Find a basis for Col B, where

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{b}_1 & \mathbf{b}_2 & \cdots & \mathbf{b}_5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

SOLUTION Each nonpivot column of B is a linear combination of the pivot columns. In fact, $\mathbf{b}_2 = 4\mathbf{b}_1$ and $\mathbf{b}_4 = 2\mathbf{b}_1 - \mathbf{b}_3$. By the Spanning Set Theorem, we may discard $\mathbf{b}_2$ and $\mathbf{b}_4$, and $\{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_3, \mathbf{b}_5\}$ will still span Col B. Let

$$S = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_3, \mathbf{b}_5\} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

Since $\mathbf{b}_1 \neq 0$ and no vector in S is a linear combination of the vectors that precede it, S is linearly independent (Theorem 4). Thus S is a basis for Col B. ■

What about a matrix A that is *not* in reduced echelon form? Recall that any linear dependence relationship among the columns of A can be expressed in the form $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, where $\mathbf{x}$ is a column of weights. (If some columns are not involved in a particular dependence relation, then their weights are zero.) When A is row reduced to a matrix B, the columns of B are often totally different from the columns of A. However, the equations $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ and $B\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ have exactly the same set of solutions. If $A = [\, \mathbf{a}_1 \ \cdots \ \mathbf{a}_n \,]$ and $B = [\, \mathbf{b}_1 \ \cdots \ \mathbf{b}_n \,]$, then the vector equations

$$x_1\mathbf{a}_1 + \cdots + x_n\mathbf{a}_n = \mathbf{0} \quad \text{and} \quad x_1\mathbf{b}_1 + \cdots + x_n\mathbf{b}_n = \mathbf{0}$$

also have the same set of solutions. That is, the columns of A have *exactly the same linear dependence relationships* as the columns of B.

EXAMPLE 9 It can be shown that the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{a}_1 & \mathbf{a}_2 & \cdots & \mathbf{a}_5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 12 & 1 & 5 & 5 \\ 2 & 8 & 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 5 & 20 & 2 & 8 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$$

is row equivalent to the matrix B in Example 8. Find a basis for Col A.

SOLUTION In Example 8 we saw that

$$\mathbf{b}_2 = 4\mathbf{b}_1 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{b}_4 = 2\mathbf{b}_1 - \mathbf{b}_3$$

so we can expect that

$$\mathbf{a}_2 = 4\mathbf{a}_1 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{a}_4 = 2\mathbf{a}_1 - \mathbf{a}_3$$

Check that this is indeed the case! Thus we may discard $\mathbf{a}_2$ and $\mathbf{a}_4$ when selecting a minimal spanning set for Col A. In fact, $\{\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_3, \mathbf{a}_5\}$ must be linearly independent because any linear dependence relationship among $\mathbf{a}_1$, $\mathbf{a}_3$, $\mathbf{a}_5$ would imply a linear dependence relationship among $\mathbf{b}_1$, $\mathbf{b}_3$, $\mathbf{b}_5$. But we know that $\{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_3, \mathbf{b}_5\}$ is a linearly independent set. Thus $\{\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_3, \mathbf{a}_5\}$ is a basis for Col A. The columns we have used for this basis are the pivot columns of A. ■

Examples 8 and 9 illustrate the following useful fact.

THEOREM 6

The pivot columns of a matrix A form a basis for Col A.

PROOF The general proof uses the arguments discussed above. Let B be the reduced echelon form of A. The set of pivot columns of B is linearly independent, for no vector in the set is a linear combination of the vectors that precede it. Since A is row equivalent to B, the pivot columns of A are linearly independent as well, because any linear dependence relation among the columns of A corresponds to a linear dependence relation among the columns of B. For this same reason, every nonpivot column of A is a linear combination of the pivot columns of A. Thus the nonpivot columns of A may be discarded from the spanning set for Col A, by the Spanning Set Theorem. This leaves the pivot columns of A as a basis for Col A. ■

Warning: The pivot columns of a matrix A are evident when A has been reduced only to *echelon* form. But, be careful to use the *pivot columns of A itself* for the basis of Col A. Row operations can change the column space of a matrix. The columns of an echelon form B of A are often not in the column space of A. For instance, the columns of matrix B in Example 8 all have zeros in their last entries, so they cannot span the column space of matrix A in Example 9.

Two Views of a Basis

When the Spanning Set Theorem is used, the deletion of vectors from a spanning set must stop when the set becomes linearly independent. If an additional vector is deleted, it will not be a linear combination of the remaining vectors, and hence the smaller set will no longer span V. Thus a basis is a spanning set that is as small as possible.

A basis is also a linearly independent set that is as large as possible. If S is a basis for V, and if S is enlarged by one vector—say, $\mathbf{w}$—from V, then the new set cannot be linearly independent, because S spans V, and $\mathbf{w}$ is therefore a linear combination of the elements in S.

EXAMPLE 10 The following three sets in $\mathbb{R}^3$ show how a linearly independent set can be enlarged to a basis and how further enlargement destroys the linear independence of the set. Also, a spanning set can be shrunk to a basis, but further shrinking destroys the spanning property.

$$\left\{\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\0\end{bmatrix},\begin{bmatrix}2\\3\\0\end{bmatrix}\right\} \qquad \left\{\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\0\end{bmatrix},\begin{bmatrix}2\\3\\0\end{bmatrix},\begin{bmatrix}4\\5\\6\end{bmatrix}\right\} \qquad \left\{\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\0\end{bmatrix},\begin{bmatrix}2\\3\\0\end{bmatrix},\begin{bmatrix}4\\5\\6\end{bmatrix},\begin{bmatrix}7\\8\\9\end{bmatrix}\right\}$$

Linearly independent but does not span $\mathbb{R}^3$ — A basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$ — Spans $\mathbb{R}^3$ but is linearly dependent ■

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

1. Let $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix}1\\-2\\3\end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix}-2\\7\\-9\end{bmatrix}$. Determine if $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ is a basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$. Is $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ a basis for $\mathbb{R}^2$?

2. Let $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix}1\\-3\\4\end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix}6\\2\\-1\end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix}2\\-2\\3\end{bmatrix}$, and $\mathbf{v}_4 = \begin{bmatrix}-4\\-8\\9\end{bmatrix}$. Find a basis for the subspace W spanned by $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3, \mathbf{v}_4\}$.

3. Let $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\0\end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix}0\\1\\0\end{bmatrix}$, and $H = \left\{\begin{bmatrix}s\\s\\0\end{bmatrix} : s \text{ in } \mathbb{R}\right\}$. Then every vector in H is a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ because

$$\begin{bmatrix}s\\s\\0\end{bmatrix} = s\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\0\end{bmatrix} + s\begin{bmatrix}0\\1\\0\end{bmatrix}$$

SG Mastering: Basis 4-9

Is $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ a basis for H?

4. Let V and W be vector spaces, let $T : V \to W$ and $U : V \to W$ be linear transformations, and let $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ be a basis for V. If $T(\mathbf{v}_j) = U(\mathbf{v}_j)$ for every value of j between 1 and p, show that $T(\mathbf{x}) = U(\mathbf{x})$ for every vector $\mathbf{x}$ in V.

4.3 EXERCISES

Determine which sets in Exercises 1–8 are bases for $\mathbb{R}^3$. Of the sets that are *not* bases, determine which ones are linearly independent and which ones span $\mathbb{R}^3$. Justify your answers.

1. $\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\0\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}1\\1\\0\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}1\\1\\1\end{bmatrix}$

2. $\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\1\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}0\\0\\0\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}0\\1\\0\end{bmatrix}$

3. $\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\-2\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}3\\2\\-4\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}-3\\-5\\1\end{bmatrix}$

4. $\begin{bmatrix}2\\-2\\1\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}1\\-3\\2\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}-7\\5\\4\end{bmatrix}$

5. $\begin{bmatrix}1\\-3\\0\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}-2\\9\\0\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}0\\0\\0\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}0\\-3\\5\end{bmatrix}$

6. $\begin{bmatrix}1\\2\\-3\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}-4\\-5\\6\end{bmatrix}$

7. $\begin{bmatrix}-2\\3\\0\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}6\\-1\\5\end{bmatrix}$

8. $\begin{bmatrix}1\\-4\\3\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}0\\3\\-1\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}3\\-5\\4\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}0\\2\\-2\end{bmatrix}$

Find bases for the null spaces of the matrices given in Exercises 9 and 10. Refer to the remarks that follow Example 3 in Section 4.2.

9. $\begin{bmatrix}1 & 0 & -3 & 2\\0 & 1 & -5 & 4\\3 & -2 & 1 & -2\end{bmatrix}$

10. $\begin{bmatrix}1 & 0 & -5 & 1 & 4\\-2 & 1 & 6 & -2 & -2\\0 & 2 & -8 & 1 & 9\end{bmatrix}$

11. Find a basis for the set of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ in the plane $x + 2y + z = 0$. [*Hint:* Think of the equation as a "system" of homogeneous equations.]

12. Find a basis for the set of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^2$ on the line $y = 5x$.

In Exercises 13 and 14, assume that A is row equivalent to B. Find bases for Nul A and Col A.

13. $A = \begin{bmatrix}-2 & 4 & -2 & -4\\2 & -6 & -3 & 1\\-3 & 8 & 2 & -3\end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix}1 & 0 & 6 & 5\\0 & 2 & 5 & 3\\0 & 0 & 0 & 0\end{bmatrix}$

14. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -5 & 11 & -3 \\ 2 & 4 & -5 & 15 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & 4 & 5 \\ 3 & 6 & -5 & 19 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$,

$B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 & 4 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 5 & -7 & 8 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -9 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 15–18, find a basis for the space spanned by the given vectors, $\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_5$.

15. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -3 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ -4 \\ 1 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ -8 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -6 \\ 9 \end{bmatrix}$

16. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ -1 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ -3 \\ 3 \\ -4 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 3 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

17. **[M]** $\begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ 9 \\ -3 \\ -6 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \\ 1 \\ -4 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -4 \\ -9 \\ 6 \\ -7 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 8 \\ 4 \\ -7 \\ 10 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 4 \\ 11 \\ -8 \\ -7 \end{bmatrix}$

18. **[M]** $\begin{bmatrix} -8 \\ 7 \\ 6 \\ 5 \\ -7 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ -7 \\ -9 \\ -5 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -8 \\ 7 \\ 4 \\ 5 \\ -7 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 9 \\ 6 \\ -7 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -9 \\ 3 \\ -4 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$

19. Let $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ -3 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 9 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 7 \\ 11 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$, and $H = \text{Span}\,\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$. It can be verified that $4\mathbf{v}_1 + 5\mathbf{v}_2 - 3\mathbf{v}_3 = \mathbf{0}$. Use this information to find a basis for H. There is more than one answer.

20. Let $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 7 \\ 4 \\ -9 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ -7 \\ 2 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -5 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$. It can be verified that $\mathbf{v}_1 - 3\mathbf{v}_2 + 5\mathbf{v}_3 = \mathbf{0}$. Use this information to find a basis for $H = \text{Span}\,\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$.

In Exercises 21 and 22, mark each statement True or False. Justify each answer.

21. a. A single vector by itself is linearly dependent.

b. If $H = \text{Span}\,\{\mathbf{b}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{b}_p\}$, then $\{\mathbf{b}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{b}_p\}$ is a basis for H.

c. The columns of an invertible $n \times n$ matrix form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$.

d. A basis is a spanning set that is as large as possible.

e. In some cases, the linear dependence relations among the columns of a matrix can be affected by certain elementary row operations on the matrix.

22. a. A linearly independent set in a subspace H is a basis for H.

b. If a finite set S of nonzero vectors spans a vector space V, then some subset of S is a basis for V.

c. A basis is a linearly independent set that is as large as possible.

d. The standard method for producing a spanning set for Nul A, described in Section 4.2, sometimes fails to produce a basis for Nul A.

e. If B is an echelon form of a matrix A, then the pivot columns of B form a basis for Col A.

23. Suppose $\mathbb{R}^4 = \text{Span}\,\{\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_4\}$. Explain why $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_4\}$ is a basis for $\mathbb{R}^4$.

24. Let $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$ be a linearly independent set in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Explain why $\mathcal{B}$ must be a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$.

25. Let $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$, and let H be the set of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ whose second and third entries are equal. Then every vector in H has a unique expansion as a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3$, because

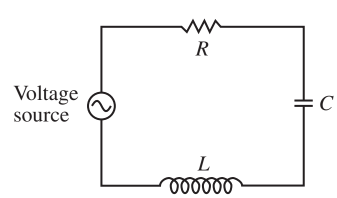
$$\begin{bmatrix} s \\ t \\ t \end{bmatrix} = s\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + (t - s)\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + s\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

for any s and t. Is $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$ a basis for H? Why or why not?

26. In the vector space of all real-valued functions, find a basis for the subspace spanned by $\{\sin t, \sin 2t, \sin t \cos t\}$.

27. Let V be the vector space of functions that describe the vibration of a mass–spring system. (Refer to Exercise 19 in Section 4.1.) Find a basis for V.

28. (*RLC circuit*) The circuit in the figure consists of a resistor (R ohms), an inductor (L henrys), a capacitor (C farads), and an initial voltage source. Let $b = R/(2L)$, and suppose R, L, and C have been selected so that b also equals $1/\sqrt{LC}$. (This is done, for instance, when the circuit is used in a voltmeter.) Let $v(t)$ be the voltage (in volts) at time t, measured across the capacitor. It can be shown that v is in the null space H of the linear transformation that maps $v(t)$ into $Lv''(t) + Rv'(t) + (1/C)v(t)$, and H consists of all functions of the form $v(t) = e^{-bt}(c_1 + c_2 t)$. Find a basis for H.



Exercises 29 and 30 show that every basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$ must contain exactly n vectors.

29. Let $S = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ be a set of k vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$, with $k < n$. Use a theorem from Section 1.4 to explain why S cannot be a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$.

30. Let $S = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ be a set of k vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$, with $k > n$. Use a theorem from Chapter 1 to explain why S cannot be a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Exercises 31 and 32 reveal an important connection between linear independence and linear transformations and provide practice using the definition of linear dependence. Let V and W be vector spaces, let $T : V \to W$ be a linear transformation, and let $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ be a subset of V.

31. Show that if $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ is linearly dependent in V, then the set of images, $\{T(\mathbf{v}_1), \dots, T(\mathbf{v}_p)\}$, is linearly dependent in W. This fact shows that if a linear transformation maps a set $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ onto a linearly *independent* set $\{T(\mathbf{v}_1), \dots, T(\mathbf{v}_p)\}$, then the original set is linearly independent, too (because it cannot be linearly dependent).

32. Suppose that T is a one-to-one transformation, so that an equation $T(\mathbf{u}) = T(\mathbf{v})$ always implies $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{v}$. Show that if the set of images $\{T(\mathbf{v}_1), \dots, T(\mathbf{v}_p)\}$ is linearly dependent, then $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ is linearly dependent. This fact shows that *a one-to-one linear transformation maps a linearly independent set onto a linearly independent set* (because in this case the set of images cannot be linearly dependent).

33. Consider the polynomials $\mathbf{p}_1(t) = 1 + t^2$ and $\mathbf{p}_2(t) = 1 - t^2$. Is $\{\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_2\}$ a linearly independent set in $\mathbb{P}_3$? Why or why not?

34. Consider the polynomials $\mathbf{p}_1(t) = 1 + t$, $\mathbf{p}_2(t) = 1 - t$, and $\mathbf{p}_3(t) = 2$ (for all t). By inspection, write a linear dependence relation among $\mathbf{p}_1$, $\mathbf{p}_2$, and $\mathbf{p}_3$. Then find a basis for Span $\{\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_2, \mathbf{p}_3\}$.

35. Let V be a vector space that contains a linearly independent set $\{\mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_2, \mathbf{u}_3, \mathbf{u}_4\}$. Describe how to construct a set of vectors $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3, \mathbf{v}_4\}$ in V such that $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_3\}$ is a basis for Span $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3, \mathbf{v}_4\}$.

36. **[M]** Let $H = \text{Span}\,\{\mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_2, \mathbf{u}_3\}$ and $K = \text{Span}\,\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$, where

$$\mathbf{u}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{u}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{u}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \\ 1 \\ -4 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ -2 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ -6 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 4 \\ 6 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Find bases for H, K, and $H + K$. (See Exercises 33 and 34 in Section 4.1.)

37. **[M]** Show that $\{t, \sin t, \cos 2t, \sin t \cos t\}$ is a linearly independent set of functions defined on $\mathbb{R}$. Start by assuming that

$$c_1 \cdot t + c_2 \cdot \sin t + c_3 \cdot \cos 2t + c_4 \cdot \sin t \cos t = 0 \tag{5}$$

Equation (5) must hold for all real t, so choose several specific values of t (say, $t = 0, .1, .2$) until you get a system of enough equations to determine that all the c_j must be zero.

38. **[M]** Show that $\{1, \cos t, \cos^2 t, \dots, \cos^6 t\}$ is a linearly independent set of functions defined on $\mathbb{R}$. Use the method of Exercise 37. (This result will be needed in Exercise 34 in Section 4.5.)

WEB

SOLUTIONS TO PRACTICE PROBLEMS

1. Let $A = [\,\mathbf{v}_1 \quad \mathbf{v}_2\,]$. Row operations show that

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ -2 & 7 \\ 3 & -9 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Not every row of A contains a pivot position. So the columns of A do not span $\mathbb{R}^3$, by Theorem 4 in Section 1.4. Hence $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ is not a basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$. Since $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ are not in $\mathbb{R}^2$, they cannot possibly be a basis for $\mathbb{R}^2$. However, since $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ are obviously linearly independent, they are a basis for a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$, namely, Span $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$.

2. Set up a matrix A whose column space is the space spanned by $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3, \mathbf{v}_4\}$, and then row reduce A to find its pivot columns.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 6 & 2 & -4 \\ -3 & 2 & -2 & -8 \\ 4 & -1 & 3 & 9 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 6 & 2 & -4 \\ 0 & 20 & 4 & -20 \\ 0 & -25 & -5 & 25 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 6 & 2 & -4 \\ 0 & 5 & 1 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The first two columns of A are the pivot columns and hence form a basis of Col $A = W$. Hence $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ is a basis for W. Note that the reduced echelon form of A is not needed in order to locate the pivot columns.

3. Neither $\mathbf{v}_1$ nor $\mathbf{v}_2$ is in H, so $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ cannot be a basis for H. In fact, $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ is a basis for the *plane* of all vectors of the form $(c_1, c_2, 0)$, but H is only a *line*.
4. Since $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ is a basis for V, for any vector $\mathbf{x}$ in V, there exist scalars $c_1, \dots, c_p$ such that $\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + c_p\mathbf{v}_p$. Then since T and U are linear transformations

$$\begin{aligned} T(\mathbf{x}) &= T(c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + c_p\mathbf{v}_p) = c_1T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \cdots + c_pT(\mathbf{v}_p) \\ &= c_1U(\mathbf{v}_1) + \cdots + c_pU(\mathbf{v}_p) = U(c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + c_p\mathbf{v}_p) \\ &= U(\mathbf{x}) \end{aligned}$$

4.4 COORDINATE SYSTEMS

An important reason for specifying a basis $\mathcal{B}$ for a vector space V is to impose a "coordinate system" on V. This section will show that if $\mathcal{B}$ contains n vectors, then the coordinate system will make V act like $\mathbb{R}^n$. If V is already $\mathbb{R}^n$ itself, then $\mathcal{B}$ will determine a coordinate system that gives a new "view" of V.

The existence of coordinate systems rests on the following fundamental result.

THEOREM 7

The Unique Representation Theorem

Let $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \dots, \mathbf{b}_n\}$ be a basis for a vector space V. Then for each $\mathbf{x}$ in V, there exists a unique set of scalars $c_1, \dots, c_n$ such that

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{b}_1 + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{b}_n \tag{1}$$

PROOF Since $\mathcal{B}$ spans V, there exist scalars such that (1) holds. Suppose $\mathbf{x}$ also has the representation

$$\mathbf{x} = d_1\mathbf{b}_1 + \cdots + d_n\mathbf{b}_n$$

for scalars $d_1, \dots, d_n$. Then, subtracting, we have

$$\mathbf{0} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x} = (c_1 - d_1)\mathbf{b}_1 + \cdots + (c_n - d_n)\mathbf{b}_n \tag{2}$$

Since $\mathcal{B}$ is linearly independent, the weights in (2) must all be zero. That is, $c_j = d_j$ for $1 \le j \le n$. ■

DEFINITION

Suppose $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \dots, \mathbf{b}_n\}$ is a basis for V and $\mathbf{x}$ is in V. The **coordinates of x relative to the basis $\mathcal{B}$** (or the **$\mathcal{B}$-coordinates of x**) are the weights $c_1, \dots, c_n$ such that $\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{b}_1 + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{b}_n$.

If $c_1, \dots, c_n$ are the $\mathcal{B}$-coordinates of $\mathbf{x}$, then the vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$

$$[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} c_1 \\ \vdots \\ c_n \end{bmatrix}$$

is the **coordinate vector of x (relative to $\mathcal{B}$)**, or the **$\mathcal{B}$-coordinate vector of x**. The mapping $\mathbf{x} \mapsto [\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}}$ is the **coordinate mapping (determined by $\mathcal{B}$)**.[1]

[1] The concept of a coordinate mapping assumes that the basis $\mathcal{B}$ is an indexed set whose vectors are listed in some fixed preassigned order. This property makes the definition of $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}}$ unambiguous.

EXAMPLE 1 Consider a basis $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2\}$ for $\mathbb{R}^2$, where $\mathbf{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$. Suppose an $\mathbf{x}$ in $\mathbb{R}^2$ has the coordinate vector $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$. Find $\mathbf{x}$.

SOLUTION The $\mathcal{B}$-coordinates of $\mathbf{x}$ tell how to build $\mathbf{x}$ from the vectors in $\mathcal{B}$. That is,

$$\mathbf{x} = (-2)\mathbf{b}_1 + 3\mathbf{b}_2 = (-2)\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + 3\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

■

EXAMPLE 2 The entries in the vector $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$ are the coordinates of $\mathbf{x}$ relative to the *standard basis* $\mathcal{E} = \{\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2\}$, since

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix} = 1 \cdot \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + 6 \cdot \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = 1 \cdot \mathbf{e}_1 + 6 \cdot \mathbf{e}_2$$

If $\mathcal{E} = \{\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2\}$, then $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{E}} = \mathbf{x}$. ■

A Graphical Interpretation of Coordinates

A coordinate system on a set consists of a one-to-one mapping of the points in the set into $\mathbb{R}^n$. For example, ordinary graph paper provides a coordinate system for the plane when one selects perpendicular axes and a unit of measurement on each axis. Figure 1 shows the standard basis $\{\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2\}$, the vectors $\mathbf{b}_1 (= \mathbf{e}_1)$ and $\mathbf{b}_2$ from Example 1, and the vector $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$. The coordinates 1 and 6 give the location of $\mathbf{x}$ relative to the standard basis: 1 unit in the $\mathbf{e}_1$ direction and 6 units in the $\mathbf{e}_2$ direction.

Figure 2 shows the vectors $\mathbf{b}_1$, $\mathbf{b}_2$, and $\mathbf{x}$ from Figure 1. (Geometrically, the three vectors lie on a vertical line in both figures.) However, the standard coordinate grid was erased and replaced by a grid especially adapted to the basis $\mathcal{B}$ in Example 1. The coordinate vector $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ gives the location of $\mathbf{x}$ on this new coordinate system: -2 units in the $\mathbf{b}_1$ direction and 3 units in the $\mathbf{b}_2$ direction.

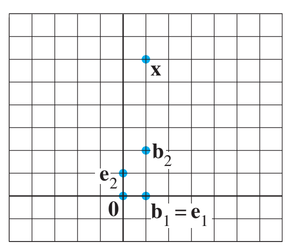


FIGURE 1 Standard graph paper.

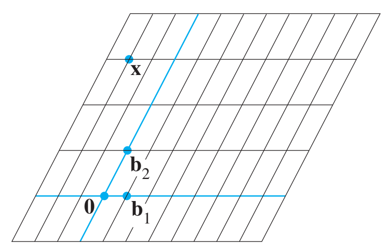
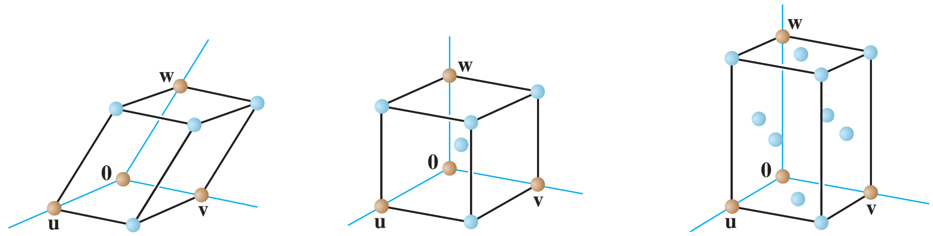


FIGURE 2 $\mathcal{B}$-graph paper.

EXAMPLE 3 In crystallography, the description of a crystal lattice is aided by choosing a basis $\{\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}\}$ for $\mathbb{R}^3$ that corresponds to three adjacent edges of one "unit cell" of the crystal. An entire lattice is constructed by stacking together many copies of one cell. There are fourteen basic types of unit cells; three are displayed in Figure 3.[2]

[2] Adapted from *The Science and Engineering of Materials*, 4th Ed., by Donald R. Askeland (Boston: Prindle, Weber & Schmidt, ©2002), p. 36.



(a)
Simple
monoclinic

(b)
Body-centered
cubic

(c)
Face-centered
orthorhombic

FIGURE 3 Examples of unit cells.

The coordinates of atoms within the crystal are given relative to the basis for the lattice. For instance,

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1/2 \\ 1/2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

identifies the top face-centered atom in the cell in Figure 3(c). ■

Coordinates in $\mathbb{R}^n$

When a basis $\mathcal{B}$ for $\mathbb{R}^n$ is fixed, the $\mathcal{B}$-coordinate vector of a specified $\mathbf{x}$ is easily found, as in the next example.

EXAMPLE 4 Let $\mathbf{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2\}$. Find the coordinate vector $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}}$ of $\mathbf{x}$ relative to $\mathcal{B}$.

SOLUTION The $\mathcal{B}$-coordinates c_1, c_2 of $\mathbf{x}$ satisfy

$$c_1 \underset{\mathbf{b}_1}{\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}} + c_2 \underset{\mathbf{b}_2}{\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}} = \underset{\mathbf{x}}{\begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}}$$

or

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} c_1 \\ c_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix} \qquad (3)$$

$$\mathbf{b}_1 \quad \mathbf{b}_2 \qquad\qquad \mathbf{x}$$

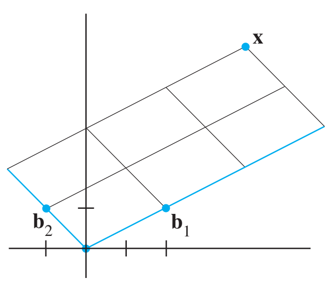


FIGURE 4
The $\mathcal{B}$-coordinate vector of $\mathbf{x}$ is $(3, 2)$.

This equation can be solved by row operations on an augmented matrix or by using the inverse of the matrix on the left. In any case, the solution is $c_1 = 3$, $c_2 = 2$. Thus $\mathbf{x} = 3\mathbf{b}_1 + 2\mathbf{b}_2$, and

$$[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} c_1 \\ c_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$$ ■

See Figure 4.

The matrix in (3) changes the $\mathcal{B}$-coordinates of a vector $\mathbf{x}$ into the standard coordinates for $\mathbf{x}$. An analogous change of coordinates can be carried out in $\mathbb{R}^n$ for a basis $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{b}_n\}$. Let

$$P_{\mathcal{B}} = [\,\mathbf{b}_1 \quad \mathbf{b}_2 \quad \cdots \quad \mathbf{b}_n\,]$$

Then the vector equation

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{b}_1 + c_2\mathbf{b}_2 + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{b}_n$$

is equivalent to

$$\boxed{\mathbf{x} = P_{\mathcal{B}}[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}}} \tag{4}$$

We call $P_{\mathcal{B}}$ the **change-of-coordinates matrix** from $\mathcal{B}$ to the standard basis in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Left-multiplication by $P_{\mathcal{B}}$ transforms the coordinate vector $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}}$ into $\mathbf{x}$. The change-of-coordinates equation (4) is important and will be needed at several points in Chapters 5 and 7.

Since the columns of $P_{\mathcal{B}}$ form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$, $P_{\mathcal{B}}$ is invertible (by the Invertible Matrix Theorem). Left-multiplication by $P_{\mathcal{B}}^{-1}$ converts $\mathbf{x}$ into its $\mathcal{B}$-coordinate vector:

$$P_{\mathcal{B}}^{-1}\mathbf{x} = [\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}}$$

The correspondence $\mathbf{x} \mapsto [\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}}$, produced here by $P_{\mathcal{B}}^{-1}$, is the coordinate mapping mentioned earlier. Since $P_{\mathcal{B}}^{-1}$ is an invertible matrix, the coordinate mapping is a one-to-one linear transformation from $\mathbb{R}^n$ onto $\mathbb{R}^n$, by the Invertible Matrix Theorem. (See also Theorem 12 in Section 1.9.) This property of the coordinate mapping is also true in a general vector space that has a basis, as we shall see.

The Coordinate Mapping

Choosing a basis $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \dots, \mathbf{b}_n\}$ for a vector space V introduces a coordinate system in V. The coordinate mapping $\mathbf{x} \mapsto [\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}}$ connects the possibly unfamiliar space V to the familiar space $\mathbb{R}^n$. See Figure 5. Points in V can now be identified by their new "names."

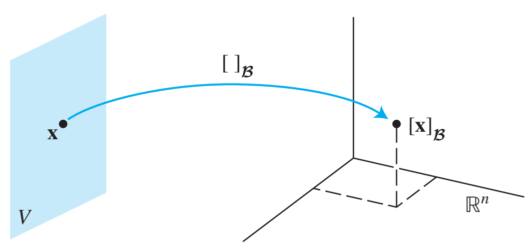


FIGURE 5 The coordinate mapping from V onto $\mathbb{R}^n$.

THEOREM 8

> Let $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \dots, \mathbf{b}_n\}$ be a basis for a vector space V. Then the coordinate mapping $\mathbf{x} \mapsto [\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}}$ is a one-to-one linear transformation from V onto $\mathbb{R}^n$.

PROOF Take two typical vectors in V, say,

$$\mathbf{u} = c_1\mathbf{b}_1 + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{b}_n$$
$$\mathbf{w} = d_1\mathbf{b}_1 + \cdots + d_n\mathbf{b}_n$$

Then, using vector operations,

$$\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w} = (c_1 + d_1)\mathbf{b}_1 + \cdots + (c_n + d_n)\mathbf{b}_n$$

It follows that

$$[\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{w}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} c_1+d_1 \\ \vdots \\ c_n+d_n \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} c_1 \\ \vdots \\ c_n \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} d_1 \\ \vdots \\ d_n \end{bmatrix} = [\mathbf{u}]_{\mathcal{B}} + [\mathbf{w}]_{\mathcal{B}}$$

So the coordinate mapping preserves addition. If r is any scalar, then

$$r\mathbf{u} = r(c_1\mathbf{b}_1 + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{b}_n) = (rc_1)\mathbf{b}_1 + \cdots + (rc_n)\mathbf{b}_n$$

So

$$[r\mathbf{u}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} rc_1 \\ \vdots \\ rc_n \end{bmatrix} = r\begin{bmatrix} c_1 \\ \vdots \\ c_n \end{bmatrix} = r[\mathbf{u}]_{\mathcal{B}}$$

Thus the coordinate mapping also preserves scalar multiplication and hence is a linear transformation. See Exercises 23 and 24 for verification that the coordinate mapping is one-to-one and maps V onto $\mathbb{R}^n$. ■

The linearity of the coordinate mapping extends to linear combinations, just as in Section 1.8. If $\mathbf{u}_1, \dots, \mathbf{u}_p$ are in V and if $c_1, \dots, c_p$ are scalars, then

$$[c_1\mathbf{u}_1 + \cdots + c_p\mathbf{u}_p]_{\mathcal{B}} = c_1[\mathbf{u}_1]_{\mathcal{B}} + \cdots + c_p[\mathbf{u}_p]_{\mathcal{B}} \tag{5}$$

In words, (5) says that the $\mathcal{B}$-coordinate vector of a linear combination of $\mathbf{u}_1, \dots, \mathbf{u}_p$ is the *same* linear combination of their coordinate vectors.

The coordinate mapping in Theorem 8 is an important example of an *isomorphism* from V onto $\mathbb{R}^n$. In general, a one-to-one linear transformation from a vector space V onto a vector space W is called an **isomorphism** from V onto W (*iso* from the Greek for "the same," and *morph* from the Greek for "form" or "structure"). The notation and terminology for V and W may differ, but the two spaces are indistinguishable as vector spaces. *Every vector space calculation in V is accurately reproduced in W, and vice versa*. In particular, any real vector space with a basis of n vectors is indistinguishable from $\mathbb{R}^n$. See Exercises 25 and 26.

SG Isomorphic Vector Spaces 4–11

EXAMPLE 5 Let $\mathcal{B}$ be the standard basis of the space $\mathbb{P}_3$ of polynomials; that is, let $\mathcal{B} = \{1, t, t^2, t^3\}$. A typical element $\mathbf{p}$ of $\mathbb{P}_3$ has the form

$$\mathbf{p}(t) = a_0 + a_1t + a_2t^2 + a_3t^3$$

Since $\mathbf{p}$ is already displayed as a linear combination of the standard basis vectors, we conclude that

$$[\mathbf{p}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} a_0 \\ a_1 \\ a_2 \\ a_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus the coordinate mapping $\mathbf{p} \mapsto [\mathbf{p}]_{\mathcal{B}}$ is an isomorphism from $\mathbb{P}_3$ onto $\mathbb{R}^4$. All vector space operations in $\mathbb{P}_3$ correspond to operations in $\mathbb{R}^4$. ■

If we think of $\mathbb{P}_3$ and $\mathbb{R}^4$ as displays on two computer screens that are connected via the coordinate mapping, then every vector space operation in $\mathbb{P}_3$ on one screen is exactly duplicated by a corresponding vector operation in $\mathbb{R}^4$ on the other screen. The vectors on the $\mathbb{P}_3$ screen look different from those on the $\mathbb{R}^4$ screen, but they "act" as vectors in exactly the same way. See Figure 6.

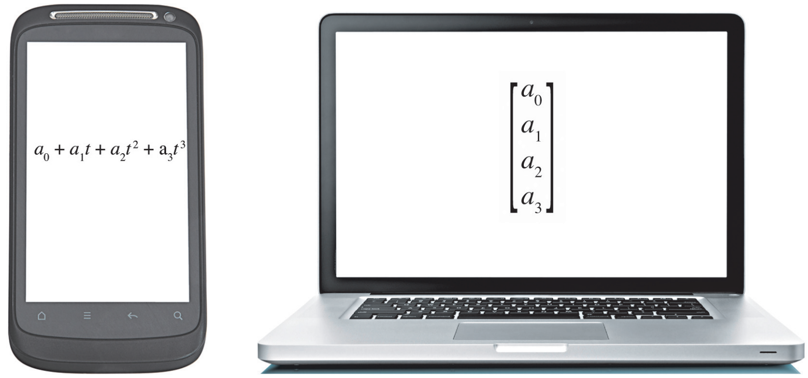


FIGURE 6 The space $\mathbb{P}_3$ is isomorphic to $\mathbb{R}^4$.

EXAMPLE 6 Use coordinate vectors to verify that the polynomials $1 + 2t^2$, $4 + t + 5t^2$, and $3 + 2t$ are linearly dependent in $\mathbb{P}_2$.

SOLUTION The coordinate mapping from Example 5 produces the coordinate vectors $(1, 0, 2)$, $(4, 1, 5)$, and $(3, 2, 0)$, respectively. Writing these vectors as the *columns* of a matrix A, we can determine their independence by row reducing the augmented matrix for $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 5 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The columns of A are linearly dependent, so the corresponding polynomials are linearly dependent. In fact, it is easy to check that column 3 of A is 2 times column 2 minus 5 times column 1. The corresponding relation for the polynomials is

$$3 + 2t = 2(4 + t + 5t^2) - 5(1 + 2t^2)$$ ■

The final example concerns a plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$ that is isomorphic to $\mathbb{R}^2$.

EXAMPLE 7 Let

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 6 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 12 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix},$$

and $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$. Then $\mathcal{B}$ is a basis for $H = \text{Span}\,\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$. Determine if $\mathbf{x}$ is in H, and if it is, find the coordinate vector of $\mathbf{x}$ relative to $\mathcal{B}$.

SOLUTION If $\mathbf{x}$ is in H, then the following vector equation is consistent:

$$c_1 \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 6 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} + c_2 \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 12 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

The scalars c_1 and c_2, if they exist, are the $\mathcal{B}$-coordinates of $\mathbf{x}$. Using row operations, we obtain

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 & 3 \\ 6 & 0 & 12 \\ 2 & 1 & 7 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus $c_1 = 2, c_2 = 3$, and $[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$. The coordinate system on H determined by $\mathcal{B}$ is shown in Figure 7. ■

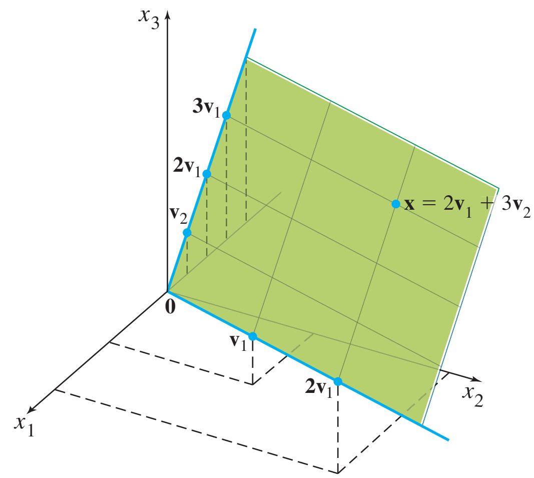


FIGURE 7 A coordinate system on a plane H in $\mathbb{R}^3$.

If a different basis for H were chosen, would the associated coordinate system also make H isomorphic to $\mathbb{R}^2$? Surely, this must be true. We shall prove it in the next section.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

1. Let $\mathbf{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 4 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{b}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -6 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} -8 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$.

a. Show that the set $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2, \mathbf{b}_3\}$ is a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

b. Find the change-of-coordinates matrix from $\mathcal{B}$ to the standard basis.

c. Write the equation that relates $\mathbf{x}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ to $[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{B}}$.

d. Find $[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{B}}$, for the $\mathbf{x}$ given above.

2. The set $\mathcal{B} = \{1 + t, 1 + t^2, t + t^2\}$ is a basis for $\mathbb{P}_2$. Find the coordinate vector of $\mathbf{p}(t) = 6 + 3t - t^2$ relative to $\mathcal{B}$.

4.4 EXERCISES

In Exercises 1–4, find the vector $\mathbf{x}$ determined by the given coordinate vector $[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{B}}$ and the given basis $\mathcal{B}$.

1. $\mathcal{B} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -4 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix} \right\}, [\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$

2. $\mathcal{B} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix} \right\}, [\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix}$

3. $\mathcal{B} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -4 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 2 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ -7 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \right\}, [\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$

4. $\mathcal{B} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -5 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ -7 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} \right\}, [\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} -4 \\ 8 \\ -7 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 5–8, find the coordinate vector $[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{B}}$ of $\mathbf{x}$ relative to the given basis $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \dots, \mathbf{b}_n\}$.

5. $\mathbf{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

6. $\mathbf{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ -6 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$

7. $\mathbf{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 4 \\ 9 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ -9 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$

8. $\mathbf{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 8 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -5 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 9 and 10, find the change-of-coordinates matrix from $\mathcal{B}$ to the standard basis in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

9. $\mathcal{B} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -9 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 8 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$

10. $\mathcal{B} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ -2 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$

In Exercises 11 and 12, use an inverse matrix to find $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_\mathcal{B}$ for the given $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathcal{B}$.

11. $\mathcal{B} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -4 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix} \right\}, \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -6 \end{bmatrix}$

12. $\mathcal{B} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix} \right\}, \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$

13. The set $\mathcal{B} = \{1 + t^2, t + t^2, 1 + 2t + t^2\}$ is a basis for $\mathbb{P}_2$. Find the coordinate vector of $\mathbf{p}(t) = 1 + 4t + 7t^2$ relative to $\mathcal{B}$.

14. The set $\mathcal{B} = \{1 - t^2, t - t^2, 2 - 2t + t^2\}$ is a basis for $\mathbb{P}_2$. Find the coordinate vector of $\mathbf{p}(t) = 3 + t - 6t^2$ relative to $\mathcal{B}$.

In Exercises 15 and 16, mark each statement True or False. Justify each answer. Unless stated otherwise, $\mathcal{B}$ is a basis for a vector space V.

15. a. If $\mathbf{x}$ is in V and if $\mathcal{B}$ contains n vectors, then the $\mathcal{B}$-coordinate vector of $\mathbf{x}$ is in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

b. If $P_\mathcal{B}$ is the change-of-coordinates matrix, then $[\mathbf{x}]_\mathcal{B} = P_\mathcal{B}\mathbf{x}$, for $\mathbf{x}$ in V.

c. The vector spaces $\mathbb{P}_3$ and $\mathbb{R}^3$ are isomorphic.

16. a. If $\mathcal{B}$ is the standard basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$, then the $\mathcal{B}$-coordinate vector of an $\mathbf{x}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ is $\mathbf{x}$ itself.

b. The correspondence $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_\mathcal{B} \mapsto \mathbf{x}$ is called the coordinate mapping.

c. In some cases, a plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$ can be isomorphic to $\mathbb{R}^2$.

17. The vectors $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -8 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}$ span $\mathbb{R}^2$ but do not form a basis. Find two different ways to express $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ as a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3$.

18. Let $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \dots, \mathbf{b}_n\}$ be a basis for a vector space V. Explain why the $\mathcal{B}$-coordinate vectors of $\mathbf{b}_1, \dots, \mathbf{b}_n$ are the columns $\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n$ of the $n \times n$ identity matrix.

19. Let S be a finite set in a vector space V with the property that every $\mathbf{x}$ in V has a unique representation as a linear combination of elements of S. Show that S is a basis of V.

20. Suppose $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_4\}$ is a linearly dependent spanning set for a vector space V. Show that each $\mathbf{w}$ in V can be expressed in more than one way as a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_4$. [*Hint:* Let $\mathbf{w} = k_1\mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + k_4\mathbf{v}_4$ be an arbitrary vector in V. Use the linear dependence of $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_4\}$ to produce another representation of $\mathbf{w}$ as a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_4$.]

21. Let $\mathcal{B} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -4 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 9 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$. Since the coordinate mapping determined by $\mathcal{B}$ is a linear transformation from $\mathbb{R}^2$ into $\mathbb{R}^2$, this mapping must be implemented by some 2×2 matrix A. Find it. [*Hint:* Multiplication by A should transform a vector $\mathbf{x}$ into its coordinate vector $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_\mathcal{B}$.]

22. Let $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \dots, \mathbf{b}_n\}$ be a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$. Produce a description of an $n \times n$ matrix A that implements the coordinate mapping $\mathbf{x} \mapsto [\,\mathbf{x}\,]_\mathcal{B}$. (See Exercise 21.)

Exercises 23–26 concern a vector space V, a basis $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \dots, \mathbf{b}_n\}$, and the coordinate mapping $\mathbf{x} \mapsto [\,\mathbf{x}\,]_\mathcal{B}$.

23. Show that the coordinate mapping is one-to-one. [*Hint:* Suppose $[\,\mathbf{u}\,]_\mathcal{B} = [\,\mathbf{w}\,]_\mathcal{B}$ for some $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{w}$ in V, and show that $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{w}$.]

24. Show that the coordinate mapping is *onto* $\mathbb{R}^n$. That is, given any $\mathbf{y}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$, with entries $y_1, \dots, y_n$, produce $\mathbf{u}$ in V such that $[\,\mathbf{u}\,]_\mathcal{B} = \mathbf{y}$.

25. Show that a subset $\{\mathbf{u}_1, \dots, \mathbf{u}_p\}$ in V is linearly independent if and only if the set of coordinate vectors $\{[\,\mathbf{u}_1\,]_\mathcal{B}, \dots, [\,\mathbf{u}_p\,]_\mathcal{B}\}$ is linearly independent in $\mathbb{R}^n$. [*Hint:* Since the coordinate mapping is one-to-one, the following equations have the same solutions, $c_1, \dots, c_p$.]

$$c_1\mathbf{u}_1 + \cdots + c_p\mathbf{u}_p = \mathbf{0} \quad \text{The zero vector in } V$$
$$[\,c_1\mathbf{u}_1 + \cdots + c_p\mathbf{u}_p\,]_\mathcal{B} = [\,\mathbf{0}\,]_\mathcal{B} \quad \text{The zero vector in } \mathbb{R}^n$$

26. Given vectors $\mathbf{u}_1, \dots, \mathbf{u}_p$, and $\mathbf{w}$ in V, show that $\mathbf{w}$ is a linear combination of $\mathbf{u}_1, \dots, \mathbf{u}_p$ if and only if $[\,\mathbf{w}\,]_\mathcal{B}$ is a linear combination of the coordinate vectors $[\,\mathbf{u}_1\,]_\mathcal{B}, \dots, [\,\mathbf{u}_p\,]_\mathcal{B}$.

In Exercises 27–30, use coordinate vectors to test the linear independence of the sets of polynomials. Explain your work.

27. $1 + 2t^3,\ 2 + t - 3t^2,\ -t + 2t^2 - t^3$

28. $1 - 2t^2 - t^3,\ t + 2t^3,\ 1 + t - 2t^2$

29. $(1 - t)^2,\ t - 2t^2 + t^3,\ (1 - t)^3$

30. $(2 - t)^3,\ (3 - t)^2,\ 1 + 6t - 5t^2 + t^3$

31. Use coordinate vectors to test whether the following sets of polynomials span $\mathbb{P}_2$. Justify your conclusions.

a. $1 - 3t + 5t^2, -3 + 5t - 7t^2, -4 + 5t - 6t^2, 1 - t^2$

b. $5t + t^2, 1 - 8t - 2t^2, -3 + 4t + 2t^2, 2 - 3t$

32. Let $\mathbf{p}_1(t) = 1 + t^2, \mathbf{p}_2(t) = t - 3t^2, \mathbf{p}_3(t) = 1 + t - 3t^2$.

a. Use coordinate vectors to show that these polynomials form a basis for $\mathbb{P}_2$.

b. Consider the basis $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_2, \mathbf{p}_3\}$ for $\mathbb{P}_2$. Find $\mathbf{q}$ in $\mathbb{P}_2$, given that $[\mathbf{q}]_\mathcal{B} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$.

In Exercises 33 and 34, determine whether the sets of polynomials form a basis for $\mathbb{P}_3$. Justify your conclusions.

33. [**M**] $3 + 7t, 5 + t - 2t^3, t - 2t^2, 1 + 16t - 6t^2 + 2t^3$

34. [**M**] $5 - 3t + 4t^2 + 2t^3, 9 + t + 8t^2 - 6t^3, 6 - 2t + 5t^2, t^3$

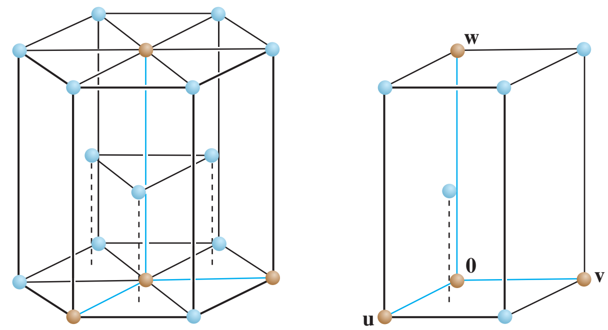
35. [**M**] Let $H = \text{Span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ and $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$. Show that $\mathbf{x}$ is in H and find the $\mathcal{B}$-coordinate vector of $\mathbf{x}$, for

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 11 \\ -5 \\ 10 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 14 \\ -8 \\ 13 \\ 10 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 19 \\ -13 \\ 18 \\ 15 \end{bmatrix}$$

36. [**M**] Let $H = \text{Span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$ and $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$. Show that $\mathcal{B}$ is a basis for H and $\mathbf{x}$ is in H, and find the $\mathcal{B}$-coordinate vector of $\mathbf{x}$, for

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} -6 \\ 4 \\ -9 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ -3 \\ 7 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} -9 \\ 5 \\ -8 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 7 \\ -8 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

[**M**] Exercises 37 and 38 concern the crystal lattice for titanium, which has the hexagonal structure shown on the left in the accompanying figure. The vectors $\begin{bmatrix} 2.6 \\ -1.5 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 3 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 4.8 \end{bmatrix}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ form a basis for the unit cell shown on the right. The numbers here are Ångstrom units (1 Å $= 10^{-8}$ cm). In alloys of titanium, some additional atoms may be in the unit cell at the *octahedral* and *tetrahedral* sites (so named because of the geometric objects formed by atoms at these locations).



The hexagonal close-packed lattice and its unit cell.

37. One of the octahedral sites is $\begin{bmatrix} 1/2 \\ 1/4 \\ 1/6 \end{bmatrix}$, relative to the lattice basis. Determine the coordinates of this site relative to the standard basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

38. One of the tetrahedral sites is $\begin{bmatrix} 1/2 \\ 1/2 \\ 1/3 \end{bmatrix}$. Determine the coordinates of this site relative to the standard basis of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

SOLUTIONS TO PRACTICE PROBLEMS

1. a. It is evident that the matrix $P_{\mathcal{B}} = [\,\mathbf{b}_1 \quad \mathbf{b}_2 \quad \mathbf{b}_3\,]$ is row-equivalent to the identity matrix. By the Invertible Matrix Theorem, $P_{\mathcal{B}}$ is invertible and its columns form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$.

b. From part (a), the change-of-coordinates matrix is $P_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 & 3 \\ 0 & 4 & -6 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$.

c. $\mathbf{x} = P_{\mathcal{B}}[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}}$

d. To solve the equation in (c), it is probably easier to row reduce an augmented matrix than to compute $P_{\mathcal{B}}^{-1}$:

$$\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 & 3 \\ 0 & 4 & -6 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}}_{P_{\mathcal{B}}}\ \underbrace{\begin{matrix} -8 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{matrix}}_{\mathbf{x}} \sim \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}}_{I}\ \underbrace{\begin{matrix} -5 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{matrix}}_{[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}}}$$

Hence

$$[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} -5 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

2. The coordinates of $\mathbf{p}(t) = 6 + 3t - t^2$ with respect to $\mathcal{B}$ satisfy

$$c_1(1 + t) + c_2(1 + t^2) + c_3(t + t^2) = 6 + 3t - t^2$$

Equating coefficients of like powers of t, we have

$$\begin{aligned} c_1 + c_2 &= 6 \\ c_1 + c_3 &= 3 \\ c_2 + c_3 &= -1 \end{aligned}$$

Solving, we find that $c_1 = 5, c_2 = 1, c_3 = -2$, and $[\,\mathbf{p}\,]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$.

4.5 THE DIMENSION OF A VECTOR SPACE

Theorem 8 in Section 4.4 implies that a vector space V with a basis $\mathcal{B}$ containing n vectors is isomorphic to $\mathbb{R}^n$. This section shows that this number n is an intrinsic property (called the dimension) of the space V that does not depend on the particular choice of basis. The discussion of dimension will give additional insight into properties of bases.

The first theorem generalizes a well-known result about the vector space $\mathbb{R}^n$.

THEOREM 9

If a vector space V has a basis $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \dots, \mathbf{b}_n\}$, then any set in V containing more than n vectors must be linearly dependent.

PROOF Let $\{\mathbf{u}_1, \dots, \mathbf{u}_p\}$ be a set in V with more than n vectors. The coordinate vectors $[\,\mathbf{u}_1\,]_{\mathcal{B}}, \dots, [\,\mathbf{u}_p\,]_{\mathcal{B}}$ form a linearly dependent set in $\mathbb{R}^n$, because there are more vectors (p) than entries (n) in each vector. So there exist scalars $c_1, \dots, c_p$, not all zero, such that

$$c_1[\,\mathbf{u}_1\,]_{\mathcal{B}} + \cdots + c_p[\,\mathbf{u}_p\,]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The zero vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$

Since the coordinate mapping is a linear transformation,

$$[\,c_1\mathbf{u}_1 + \cdots + c_p\mathbf{u}_p\,]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The zero vector on the right displays the n weights needed to build the vector $c_1\mathbf{u}_1 + \cdots + c_p\mathbf{u}_p$ from the basis vectors in $\mathcal{B}$. That is, $c_1\mathbf{u}_1 + \cdots + c_p\mathbf{u}_p = 0 \cdot \mathbf{b}_1 + \cdots + 0 \cdot \mathbf{b}_n = \mathbf{0}$. Since the c_i are not all zero, $\{\mathbf{u}_1, \dots, \mathbf{u}_p\}$ is linearly dependent.[1] ■

Theorem 9 implies that if a vector space V has a basis $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \dots, \mathbf{b}_n\}$, then each linearly independent set in V has no more than n vectors.

[1] Theorem 9 also applies to infinite sets in V. An infinite set is said to be linearly dependent if some finite subset is linearly dependent; otherwise, the set is linearly independent. If S is an infinite set in V, take any subset $\{\mathbf{u}_1, \dots, \mathbf{u}_p\}$ of S, with $p > n$. The proof above shows that this subset is linearly dependent, and hence so is S.

THEOREM 10

If a vector space V has a basis of n vectors, then every basis of V must consist of exactly n vectors.

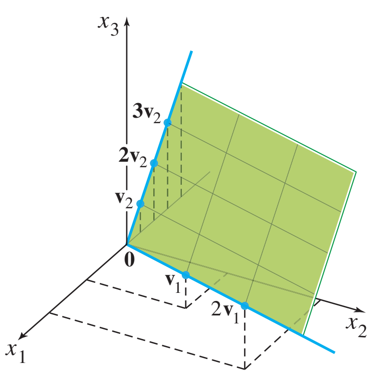
PROOF Let $\mathcal{B}_1$ be a basis of n vectors and $\mathcal{B}_2$ be any other basis (of V). Since $\mathcal{B}_1$ is a basis and $\mathcal{B}_2$ is linearly independent, $\mathcal{B}_2$ has no more than n vectors, by Theorem 9. Also, since $\mathcal{B}_2$ is a basis and $\mathcal{B}_1$ is linearly independent, $\mathcal{B}_2$ has at least n vectors. Thus $\mathcal{B}_2$ consists of exactly n vectors. ■

If a nonzero vector space V is spanned by a finite set S, then a subset of S is a basis for V, by the Spanning Set Theorem. In this case, Theorem 10 ensures that the following definition makes sense.

DEFINITION

If V is spanned by a finite set, then V is said to be **finite-dimensional**, and the **dimension** of V, written as dim V, is the number of vectors in a basis for V. The dimension of the zero vector space $\{\mathbf{0}\}$ is defined to be zero. If V is not spanned by a finite set, then V is said to be **infinite-dimensional**.

EXAMPLE 1 The standard basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$ contains n vectors, so $\dim \mathbb{R}^n = n$. The standard polynomial basis $\{1, t, t^2\}$ shows that $\dim \mathbb{P}_2 = 3$. In general, $\dim \mathbb{P}_n = n + 1$. The space $\mathbb{P}$ of all polynomials is infinite-dimensional (Exercise 27). ■



EXAMPLE 2 Let $H = \text{Span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$, where $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 6 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$. Then H is the plane studied in Example 7 in Section 4.4. A basis for H is $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$, since $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ are not multiples and hence are linearly independent. Thus $\dim H = 2$. ■

EXAMPLE 3 Find the dimension of the subspace

$$H = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} a - 3b + 6c \\ 5a + 4d \\ b - 2c - d \\ 5d \end{bmatrix} : a, b, c, d \text{ in } \mathbb{R} \right\}$$

SOLUTION It is easy to see that H is the set of all linear combinations of the vectors

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 0 \\ -2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_4 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \\ -1 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Clearly, $\mathbf{v}_1 \neq \mathbf{0}$, $\mathbf{v}_2$ is not a multiple of $\mathbf{v}_1$, but $\mathbf{v}_3$ is a multiple of $\mathbf{v}_2$. By the Spanning Set Theorem, we may discard $\mathbf{v}_3$ and still have a set that spans H. Finally, $\mathbf{v}_4$ is not a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$. So $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_4\}$ is linearly independent (by Theorem 4 in Section 4.3) and hence is a basis for H. Thus $\dim H = 3$. ■

EXAMPLE 4 The subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^3$ can be classified by dimension. See Figure 1.

0-dimensional subspaces. Only the zero subspace.

1-dimensional subspaces. Any subspace spanned by a single nonzero vector. Such subspaces are lines through the origin.

2-dimensional subspaces. Any subspace spanned by two linearly independent vectors. Such subspaces are planes through the origin.

3-dimensional subspaces. Only $\mathbb{R}^3$ itself. Any three linearly independent vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ span all of $\mathbb{R}^3$, by the Invertible Matrix Theorem. ∎

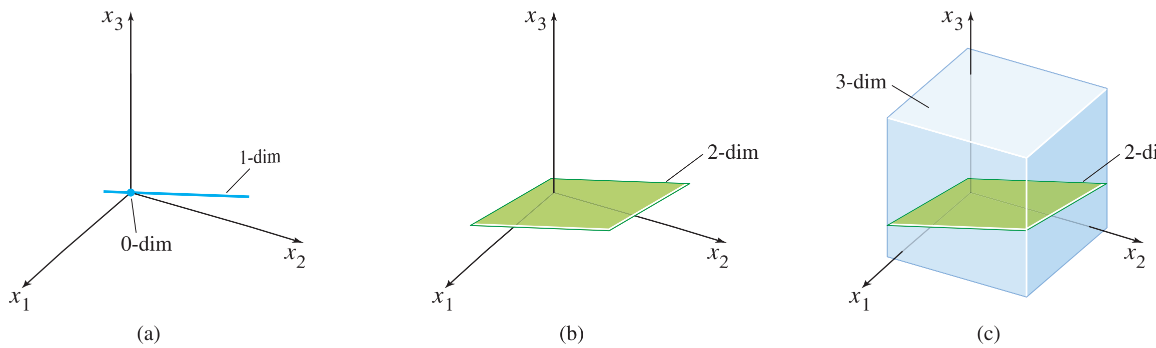


FIGURE 1 Sample subspaces of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Subspaces of a Finite-Dimensional Space

The next theorem is a natural counterpart to the Spanning Set Theorem.

THEOREM 11

> Let H be a subspace of a finite-dimensional vector space V. Any linearly independent set in H can be expanded, if necessary, to a basis for H. Also, H is finite-dimensional and
> $$\dim H \leq \dim V$$

PROOF If $H = \{\mathbf{0}\}$, then certainly $\dim H = 0 \leq \dim V$. Otherwise, let $S = \{\mathbf{u}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_k\}$ be any linearly independent set in H. If S spans H, then S is a basis for H. Otherwise, there is some $\mathbf{u}_{k+1}$ in H that is not in Span S. But then $\{\mathbf{u}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_k, \mathbf{u}_{k+1}\}$ will be linearly independent, because no vector in the set can be a linear combination of vectors that precede it (by Theorem 4).

So long as the new set does not span H, we can continue this process of expanding S to a larger linearly independent set in H. But the number of vectors in a linearly independent expansion of S can never exceed the dimension of V, by Theorem 9. So eventually the expansion of S will span H and hence will be a basis for H, and $\dim H \leq \dim V$. ∎

When the dimension of a vector space or subspace is known, the search for a basis is simplified by the next theorem. It says that if a set has the right number of elements, then one has only to show either that the set is linearly independent or that it spans the space. The theorem is of critical importance in numerous applied problems (involving differential equations or difference equations, for example) where linear independence is much easier to verify than spanning.

THEOREM 12

> **The Basis Theorem**
>
> Let V be a p-dimensional vector space, $p \geq 1$. Any linearly independent set of exactly p elements in V is automatically a basis for V. Any set of exactly p elements that spans V is automatically a basis for V.

PROOF By Theorem 11, a linearly independent set S of p elements can be extended to a basis for V. But that basis must contain exactly p elements, since $\dim V = p$. So S must already be a basis for V. Now suppose that S has p elements and spans V. Since V is nonzero, the Spanning Set Theorem implies that a subset S' of S is a basis of V. Since $\dim V = p$, S' must contain p vectors. Hence $S = S'$. ■

The Dimensions of Nul A and Col A

Since the pivot columns of a matrix A form a basis for Col A, we know the dimension of Col A as soon as we know the pivot columns. The dimension of Nul A might seem to require more work, since finding a basis for Nul A usually takes more time than a basis for Col A. But there is a shortcut!

Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix, and suppose the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ has k free variables. From Section 4.2, we know that the standard method of finding a spanning set for Nul A will produce exactly k linearly independent vectors—say, $\mathbf{u}_1, \dots, \mathbf{u}_k$—one for each free variable. So $\{\mathbf{u}_1, \dots, \mathbf{u}_k\}$ is a basis for Nul A, and the number of free variables determines the size of the basis. Let us summarize these facts for future reference.

> The dimension of Nul A is the number of free variables in the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, and the dimension of Col A is the number of pivot columns in A.

EXAMPLE 5 Find the dimensions of the null space and the column space of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 6 & -1 & 1 & -7 \\ 1 & -2 & 2 & 3 & -1 \\ 2 & -4 & 5 & 8 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$$

SOLUTION Row reduce the augmented matrix $[\,A \quad \mathbf{0}\,]$ to echelon form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 2 & 3 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

There are three free variables—x_2, x_4, and x_5. Hence the dimension of Nul A is 3. Also, $\dim \text{Col } A = 2$ because A has two pivot columns. ■

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

1. Decide whether each statement is True or False, and give a reason for each answer. Here V is a nonzero finite-dimensional vector space.
   a. If $\dim V = p$ and if S is a linearly dependent subset of V, then S contains more than p vectors.
   b. If S spans V and if T is a subset of V that contains more vectors than S, then T is linearly dependent.
2. Let H and K be subspaces of a vector space V. In Section 4.1 Exercise 32 it is established that $H \cap K$ is also a subspace of V. Prove $\dim(H \cap K) \leq \dim H$.

4.5 EXERCISES

For each subspace in Exercises 1–8, (a) find a basis, and (b) state the dimension.

1. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} s-2t \\ s+t \\ 3t \end{bmatrix} : s, t \text{ in } \mathbb{R} \right\}$

2. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 4s \\ -3s \\ -t \end{bmatrix} : s, t \text{ in } \mathbb{R} \right\}$

3. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 2c \\ a-b \\ b-3c \\ a+2b \end{bmatrix} : a, b, c \text{ in } \mathbb{R} \right\}$

4. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} a+b \\ 2a \\ 3a-b \\ -b \end{bmatrix} : a, b \text{ in } \mathbb{R} \right\}$

5. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} a-4b-2c \\ 2a+5b-4c \\ -a+2c \\ -3a+7b+6c \end{bmatrix} : a, b, c \text{ in } \mathbb{R} \right\}$

6. $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 3a+6b-c \\ 6a-2b-2c \\ -9a+5b+3c \\ -3a+b+c \end{bmatrix} : a, b, c \text{ in } \mathbb{R} \right\}$

7. $\{(a, b, c) : a-3b+c=0, b-2c=0, 2b-c=0\}$

8. $\{(a, b, c, d) : a-3b+c=0\}$

9. Find the dimension of the subspace of all vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ whose first and third entries are equal.

10. Find the dimension of the subspace H of $\mathbb{R}^2$ spanned by $\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -4 \\ 10 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$.

In Exercises 11 and 12, find the dimension of the subspace spanned by the given vectors.

11. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 9 \\ 4 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -7 \\ -3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

12. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 4 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -8 \\ 6 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 0 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}$

Determine the dimensions of Nul A and Col A for the matrices shown in Exercises 13–18.

13. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -6 & 9 & 0 & -2 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & -4 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 5 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

14. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & -4 & 2 & -1 & 6 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -3 & 7 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 4 & -3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

15. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 9 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$

16. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ -6 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$

17. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & 7 \\ 0 & 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

18. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 & -1 \\ 0 & 7 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 19 and 20, V is a vector space. Mark each statement True or False. Justify each answer.

19. a. The number of pivot columns of a matrix equals the dimension of its column space.
    b. A plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is a two-dimensional subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.
    c. The dimension of the vector space $\mathbb{P}_4$ is 4.
    d. If $\dim V = n$ and S is a linearly independent set in V, then S is a basis for V.
    e. If a set $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ spans a finite-dimensional vector space V and if T is a set of more than p vectors in V, then T is linearly dependent.

20. a. $\mathbb{R}^2$ is a two-dimensional subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.
    b. The number of variables in the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ equals the dimension of Nul A.
    c. A vector space is infinite-dimensional if it is spanned by an infinite set.
    d. If $\dim V = n$ and if S spans V, then S is a basis of V.
    e. The only three-dimensional subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$ is $\mathbb{R}^3$ itself.

21. The first four Hermite polynomials are $1, 2t, -2+4t^2$, and $-12t+8t^3$. These polynomials arise naturally in the study of certain important differential equations in mathematical physics.[2] Show that the first four Hermite polynomials form a basis of $\mathbb{P}_3$.

22. The first four Laguerre polynomials are $1, 1-t, 2-4t+t^2$, and $6-18t+9t^2-t^3$. Show that these polynomials form a basis of $\mathbb{P}_3$.

23. Let $\mathcal{B}$ be the basis of $\mathbb{P}_3$ consisting of the Hermite polynomials in Exercise 21, and let $\mathbf{p}(t) = 7-12t-8t^2+12t^3$. Find the coordinate vector of $\mathbf{p}$ relative to $\mathcal{B}$.

24. Let $\mathcal{B}$ be the basis of $\mathbb{P}_2$ consisting of the first three Laguerre polynomials listed in Exercise 22, and let $\mathbf{p}(t) = 7-8t+3t^2$. Find the coordinate vector of $\mathbf{p}$ relative to $\mathcal{B}$.

25. Let S be a subset of an n-dimensional vector space V, and suppose S contains fewer than n vectors. Explain why S cannot span V.

26. Let H be an n-dimensional subspace of an n-dimensional vector space V. Show that $H = V$.

27. Explain why the space $\mathbb{P}$ of all polynomials is an infinite-dimensional space.

---

[2] See *Introduction to Functional Analysis*, 2nd ed., by A. E. Taylor and David C. Lay (New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1980), pp. 92–93. Other sets of polynomials are discussed there, too.

28. Show that the space $C(\mathbb{R})$ of all continuous functions defined on the real line is an infinite-dimensional space.

In Exercises 29 and 30, V is a nonzero finite-dimensional vector space, and the vectors listed belong to V. Mark each statement True or False. Justify each answer. (These questions are more difficult than those in Exercises 19 and 20.)

29. a. If there exists a set $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ that spans V, then $\dim V \leq p$.

b. If there exists a linearly independent set $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ in V, then $\dim V \geq p$.

c. If $\dim V = p$, then there exists a spanning set of $p + 1$ vectors in V.

30. a. If there exists a linearly dependent set $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ in V, then $\dim V \leq p$.

b. If every set of p elements in V fails to span V, then $\dim V > p$.

c. If $p \geq 2$ and $\dim V = p$, then every set of $p - 1$ nonzero vectors is linearly independent.

Exercises 31 and 32 concern finite-dimensional vector spaces V and W and a linear transformation $T : V \to W$.

31. Let H be a nonzero subspace of V, and let $T(H)$ be the set of images of vectors in H. Then $T(H)$ is a subspace of W, by Exercise 35 in Section 4.2. Prove that $\dim T(H) \leq \dim H$.

32. Let H be a nonzero subspace of V, and suppose T is a one-to-one (linear) mapping of V into W. Prove that $\dim T(H) = \dim H$. If T happens to be a one-to-one mapping of V *onto* W, then $\dim V = \dim W$. Isomorphic finite-dimensional vector spaces have the same dimension.

33. **[M]** According to Theorem 11, a linearly independent set $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ can be expanded to a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$. One way to do this is to create $A = [\,\mathbf{v}_1 \ \cdots \ \mathbf{v}_k \ \mathbf{e}_1 \ \cdots \ \mathbf{e}_n\,]$, with $\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n$ the columns of the identity matrix; the pivot columns of A form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$.

a. Use the method described to extend the following vectors to a basis for $\mathbb{R}^5$:

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} -9 \\ -7 \\ 8 \\ -5 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 9 \\ 4 \\ 1 \\ 6 \\ -7 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 7 \\ -8 \\ 5 \\ -7 \end{bmatrix}$$

b. Explain why the method works in general: Why are the original vectors $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k$ included in the basis found for Col A? Why is Col $A = \mathbb{R}^n$?

34. **[M]** Let $\mathcal{B} = \{1, \cos t, \cos^2 t, \dots, \cos^6 t\}$ and $\mathcal{C} = \{1, \cos t, \cos 2t, \dots, \cos 6t\}$. Assume the following trigonometric identities (see Exercise 37 in Section 4.1).

$$\begin{aligned}
\cos 2t &= -1 + 2\cos^2 t \\
\cos 3t &= -3\cos t + 4\cos^3 t \\
\cos 4t &= 1 - 8\cos^2 t + 8\cos^4 t \\
\cos 5t &= 5\cos t - 20\cos^3 t + 16\cos^5 t \\
\cos 6t &= -1 + 18\cos^2 t - 48\cos^4 t + 32\cos^6 t
\end{aligned}$$

Let H be the subspace of functions spanned by the functions in $\mathcal{B}$. Then $\mathcal{B}$ is a basis for H, by Exercise 38 in Section 4.3.

a. Write the $\mathcal{B}$-coordinate vectors of the vectors in $\mathcal{C}$, and use them to show that $\mathcal{C}$ is a linearly independent set in H.

b. Explain why $\mathcal{C}$ is a basis for H.

SOLUTIONS TO PRACTICE PROBLEMS

1. a. False. Consider the set $\{\mathbf{0}\}$.

b. True. By the Spanning Set Theorem, S contains a basis for V; call that basis S'. Then T will contain more vectors than S'. By Theorem 9, T is linearly dependent.

2. Let $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ be a basis for $H \cap K$. Notice $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ is a linearly independent subset of H, hence by Theorem 11, $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$ can be expanded, if necessary, to a basis for H. Since the dimension of a subspace is just the number of vectors in a basis, it follows that $\dim (H \cap K) = p \leq \dim H$.

4.6 RANK

With the aid of vector space concepts, this section takes a look *inside* a matrix and reveals several interesting and useful relationships hidden in its rows and columns.

For instance, imagine placing 2000 random numbers into a 40×50 matrix A and then determining both the maximum number of linearly independent columns in A and the maximum number of linearly independent columns in A^T (rows in A). Remarkably, the two numbers are the same. As we'll soon see, their common value is the *rank* of the matrix. To explain why, we need to examine the subspace spanned by the rows of A.

The Row Space

If A is an $m \times n$ matrix, each row of A has n entries and thus can be identified with a vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$. The set of all linear combinations of the row vectors is called the **row space** of A and is denoted by Row A. Each row has n entries, so Row A is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$. Since the rows of A are identified with the columns of A^T, we could also write Col A^T in place of Row A.

EXAMPLE 1 Let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & -5 & 8 & 0 & -17 \\ 1 & 3 & -5 & 1 & 5 \\ 3 & 11 & -19 & 7 & 1 \\ 1 & 7 & -13 & 5 & -3 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{aligned} \mathbf{r}_1 &= (-2, -5, 8, 0, -17) \\ \mathbf{r}_2 &= (1, 3, -5, 1, 5) \\ \mathbf{r}_3 &= (3, 11, -19, 7, 1) \\ \mathbf{r}_4 &= (1, 7, -13, 5, -3) \end{aligned}$$

The row space of A is the subspace of $\mathbb{R}^5$ spanned by $\{\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{r}_3, \mathbf{r}_4\}$. That is, Row A = Span $\{\mathbf{r}_1, \mathbf{r}_2, \mathbf{r}_3, \mathbf{r}_4\}$. It is natural to write row vectors horizontally; however, they may also be written as column vectors if that is more convenient. ■

If we knew some linear dependence relations among the rows of matrix A in Example 1, we could use the Spanning Set Theorem to shrink the spanning set to a basis. Unfortunately, row operations on A will not give us that information, because row operations change the row-dependence relations. But row reducing A is certainly worthwhile, as the next theorem shows!

THEOREM 13

If two matrices A and B are row equivalent, then their row spaces are the same. If B is in echelon form, the nonzero rows of B form a basis for the row space of A as well as for that of B.

PROOF If B is obtained from A by row operations, the rows of B are linear combinations of the rows of A. It follows that any linear combination of the rows of B is automatically a linear combination of the rows of A. Thus the row space of B is contained in the row space of A. Since row operations are reversible, the same argument shows that the row space of A is a subset of the row space of B. So the two row spaces are the same. If B is in echelon form, its nonzero rows are linearly independent because no nonzero row is a linear combination of the nonzero rows below it. (Apply Theorem 4 to the nonzero rows of B in reverse order, with the first row last.) Thus the nonzero rows of B form a basis of the (common) row space of B and A. ■

The main result of this section involves the three spaces: Row A, Col A, and Nul A. The following example prepares the way for this result and shows how *one* sequence of row operations on A leads to bases for all three spaces.

EXAMPLE 2 Find bases for the row space, the column space, and the null space of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & -5 & 8 & 0 & -17 \\ 1 & 3 & -5 & 1 & 5 \\ 3 & 11 & -19 & 7 & 1 \\ 1 & 7 & -13 & 5 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

SOLUTION To find bases for the row space and the column space, row reduce A to an echelon form:

$$A \sim B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & -5 & 1 & 5 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 & 2 & -7 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -4 & 20 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

By Theorem 13, the first three rows of B form a basis for the row space of A (as well as for the row space of B). Thus

$$\text{Basis for Row } A\text{: } \{(1, 3, -5, 1, 5), (0, 1, -2, 2, -7), (0, 0, 0, -4, 20)\}$$

For the column space, observe from B that the pivots are in columns 1, 2, and 4. Hence columns 1, 2, and 4 of A (not B) form a basis for Col A:

$$\text{Basis for Col } A\text{: } \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \\ 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -5 \\ 3 \\ 11 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 7 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

Notice that any echelon form of A provides (in its nonzero rows) a basis for Row A and also identifies the pivot columns of A for Col A. However, for Nul A, we need the *reduced echelon form*. Further row operations on B yield

$$A \sim B \sim C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is equivalent to $C\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, that is,

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_3 + x_5 &= 0 \\ x_2 - 2x_3 + 3x_5 &= 0 \\ x_4 - 5x_5 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

So $x_1 = -x_3 - x_5$, $x_2 = 2x_3 - 3x_5$, $x_4 = 5x_5$, with x_3 and x_5 free variables. The usual calculations (discussed in Section 4.2) show that

$$\text{Basis for Nul } A\text{: } \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -3 \\ 0 \\ 5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

Observe that, unlike the basis for Col A, the bases for Row A and Nul A have no simple connection with the entries in A itself.[1] ■

[1] It is possible to find a basis for the row space Row A that uses rows of A. First form A^T, and then row reduce until the pivot columns of A^T are found. These pivot columns of A^T are rows of A, and they form a basis for the row space of A.

Warning: Although the first three rows of B in Example 2 are linearly independent, it is wrong to conclude that the first three rows of A are linearly independent. (In fact, the third row of A is 2 times the first row plus 7 times the second row.) Row operations may change the linear dependence relations among the *rows* of a matrix.

The Rank Theorem

WEB

The next theorem describes fundamental relations among the dimensions of Col A, Row A, and Nul A.

DEFINITION

The **rank** of A is the dimension of the column space of A.

Since Row A is the same as Col A^T, the dimension of the row space of A is the rank of A^T. The dimension of the null space is sometimes called the **nullity** of A, though we will not use this term.

An alert reader may have already discovered part or all of the next theorem while working the exercises in Section 4.5 or reading Example 2 above.

THEOREM 14

The Rank Theorem

The dimensions of the column space and the row space of an $m \times n$ matrix A are equal. This common dimension, the rank of A, also equals the number of pivot positions in A and satisfies the equation

$$\text{rank } A + \dim \text{Nul } A = n$$

PROOF By Theorem 6 in Section 4.3, rank A is the number of pivot columns in A. Equivalently, rank A is the number of pivot positions in an echelon form B of A. Furthermore, since B has a nonzero row for each pivot, and since these rows form a basis for the row space of A, the rank of A is also the dimension of the row space.

From Section 4.5, the dimension of Nul A equals the number of free variables in the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. Expressed another way, the dimension of Nul A is the number of columns of A that are *not* pivot columns. (It is the number of these columns, not the columns themselves, that is related to Nul A.) Obviously,

$$\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{number of}\\ \text{pivot columns}\end{matrix}\right\} + \left\{\begin{matrix}\text{number of}\\ \text{nonpivot columns}\end{matrix}\right\} = \left\{\begin{matrix}\text{number of}\\ \text{columns}\end{matrix}\right\}$$

This proves the theorem. ■

The ideas behind Theorem 14 are visible in the calculations in Example 2. The three pivot positions in the echelon form B determine the basic variables and identify the basis vectors for Col A and those for Row A.

EXAMPLE 3

a. If A is a 7×9 matrix with a two-dimensional null space, what is the rank of A?

b. Could a 6×9 matrix have a two-dimensional null space?

SOLUTION

a. Since A has 9 columns, $(\text{rank } A) + 2 = 9$, and hence $\text{rank } A = 7$.

b. No. If a 6×9 matrix, call it B, had a two-dimensional null space, it would have to have rank 7, by the Rank Theorem. But the columns of B are vectors in $\mathbb{R}^6$, and so the dimension of Col B cannot exceed 6; that is, rank B cannot exceed 6. ■

The next example provides a nice way to visualize the subspaces we have been studying. In Chapter 6, we will learn that Row A and Nul A have only the zero vector in common and are actually "perpendicular" to each other. The same fact will apply to Row $A^T (= \text{Col } A)$ and Nul A^T. So Figure 1, which accompanies Example 4, creates a good mental image for the general case. (The value of studying A^T along with A is demonstrated in Exercise 29.)

EXAMPLE 4 Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 & -1 \\ 3 & 0 & -1 \\ 4 & 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$. It is readily checked that Nul A is the x_2-axis, Row A is the x_1x_3-plane, Col A is the plane whose equation is $x_1 - x_2 = 0$, and Nul A^T is the set of all multiples of $(1, -1, 0)$. Figure 1 shows Nul A and Row A in the domain of the linear transformation $\mathbf{x} \mapsto A\mathbf{x}$; the range of this mapping, Col A, is shown in a separate copy of $\mathbb{R}^3$, along with Nul A^T. ■

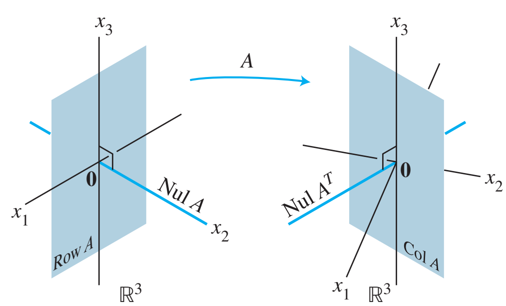


FIGURE 1 Subspaces determined by a matrix A.

Applications to Systems of Equations

The Rank Theorem is a powerful tool for processing information about systems of linear equations. The next example simulates the way a real-life problem using linear equations might be stated, without explicit mention of linear algebra terms such as matrix, subspace, and dimension.

EXAMPLE 5 A scientist has found two solutions to a homogeneous system of 40 equations in 42 variables. The two solutions are not multiples, and all other solutions can be constructed by adding together appropriate multiples of these two solutions. Can the scientist be *certain* that an associated nonhomogeneous system (with the same coefficients) has a solution?

SOLUTION Yes. Let A be the 40×42 coefficient matrix of the system. The given information implies that the two solutions are linearly independent and span Nul A. So $\dim \text{Nul } A = 2$. By the Rank Theorem, $\dim \text{Col } A = 42 - 2 = 40$. Since $\mathbb{R}^{40}$ is the only subspace of $\mathbb{R}^{40}$ whose dimension is 40, Col A must be all of $\mathbb{R}^{40}$. This means that every nonhomogeneous equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has a solution. ■

Rank and the Invertible Matrix Theorem

The various vector space concepts associated with a matrix provide several more statements for the Invertible Matrix Theorem. The new statements listed here follow those in the original Invertible Matrix Theorem in Section 2.3.

THEOREM

The Invertible Matrix Theorem (continued)

Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix. Then the following statements are each equivalent to the statement that A is an invertible matrix.

m. The columns of A form a basis of $\mathbb{R}^n$.
n. $\text{Col}\, A = \mathbb{R}^n$
o. $\dim \text{Col}\, A = n$
p. $\text{rank}\, A = n$
q. $\text{Nul}\, A = \{\mathbf{0}\}$
r. $\dim \text{Nul}\, A = 0$

PROOF Statement (m) is logically equivalent to statements (e) and (h) regarding linear independence and spanning. The other five statements are linked to the earlier ones of the theorem by the following chain of almost trivial implications:

$$(g) \Rightarrow (n) \Rightarrow (o) \Rightarrow (p) \Rightarrow (r) \Rightarrow (q) \Rightarrow (d)$$

Statement (g), which says that the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has at least one solution for each $\mathbf{b}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$, implies (n), because $\text{Col}\, A$ is precisely the set of all $\mathbf{b}$ such that the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ is consistent. The implications (n) $\Rightarrow$ (o) $\Rightarrow$ (p) follow from the definitions of dimension and rank. If the rank of A is n, the number of columns of A, then $\dim \text{Nul}\, A = 0$, by the Rank Theorem, and so $\text{Nul}\, A = \{\mathbf{0}\}$. Thus (p) $\Rightarrow$ (r) $\Rightarrow$ (q). Also, (q) implies that the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ has only the trivial solution, which is statement (d). Since statements (d) and (g) are already known to be equivalent to the statement that A is invertible, the proof is complete. ■

SG Expanded Table for the IMT 4–19

We have refrained from adding to the Invertible Matrix Theorem obvious statements about the row space of A, because the row space is the column space of A^T. Recall from statement (l) of the Invertible Matrix Theorem that A is invertible if and only if A^T is invertible. Hence every statement in the Invertible Matrix Theorem can also be stated for A^T. To do so would double the length of the theorem and produce a list of more than 30 statements!

NUMERICAL NOTE

Many algorithms discussed in this text are useful for understanding concepts and making simple computations by hand. However, the algorithms are often unsuitable for large-scale problems in real life.

Rank determination is a good example. It would seem easy to reduce a matrix to echelon form and count the pivots. But unless exact arithmetic is performed on a matrix whose entries are specified exactly, row operations can change the apparent rank of a matrix. For instance, if the value of x in the matrix $\begin{bmatrix} 5 & 7 \\ 5 & x \end{bmatrix}$ is not stored exactly as 7 in a computer, then the rank may be 1 or 2, depending on whether the computer treats $x - 7$ as zero.

In practical applications, the effective rank of a matrix A is often determined from the singular value decomposition of A, to be discussed in Section 7.4. This decomposition is also a reliable source of bases for Col A, Row A, Nul A, and Nul A^T.

WEB

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

The matrices below are row equivalent.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 1 & -6 & 8 \\ 1 & -2 & -4 & 3 & -2 \\ -7 & 8 & 10 & 3 & -10 \\ 4 & -5 & -7 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & -4 & 3 & -2 \\ 0 & 3 & 9 & -12 & 12 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

1. Find rank A and dim Nul A.

2. Find bases for Col A and Row A.

3. What is the next step to perform to find a basis for Nul A?

4. How many pivot columns are in a row echelon form of A^T?

4.6 EXERCISES

In Exercises 1–4, assume that the matrix A is row equivalent to B. Without calculations, list rank A and dim Nul A. Then find bases for Col A, Row A, and Nul A.

1. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -4 & 9 & -7 \\ -1 & 2 & -4 & 1 \\ 5 & -6 & 10 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$,

$B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & 5 \\ 0 & -2 & 5 & -6 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

2. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 & 4 & -1 & 9 \\ -2 & 6 & -6 & -1 & -10 \\ -3 & 9 & -6 & -6 & -3 \\ 3 & -9 & 4 & 9 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$,

$B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 & 0 & 5 & -7 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & -3 & 8 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

3. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 & 6 & 2 & 5 \\ -2 & 3 & -3 & -3 & -4 \\ 4 & -6 & 9 & 5 & 9 \\ -2 & 3 & 3 & -4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$,

$B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 & 6 & 2 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

4. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -3 & 7 & 9 & -9 \\ 1 & 2 & -4 & 10 & 13 & -12 \\ 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 & 1 & -3 \\ 1 & -3 & 1 & -5 & -7 & 3 \\ 1 & -2 & 0 & 0 & -5 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$,

$B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -3 & 7 & 9 & -9 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 3 & 4 & -3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

5. If a 3×8 matrix A has rank 3, find dim Nul A, dim Row A, and rank A^T.

6. If a 6×3 matrix A has rank 3, find dim Nul A, dim Row A, and rank A^T.

7. Suppose a 4×7 matrix A has four pivot columns. Is Col $A = \mathbb{R}^4$? Is Nul $A = \mathbb{R}^3$? Explain your answers.

8. Suppose a 5×6 matrix A has four pivot columns. What is dim Nul A? Is Col $A = \mathbb{R}^4$? Why or why not?

9. If the null space of a 5×6 matrix A is 4-dimensional, what is the dimension of the column space of A?

10. If the null space of a 7×6 matrix A is 5-dimensional, what is the dimension of the column space of A?

11. If the null space of an 8×5 matrix A is 2-dimensional, what is the dimension of the row space of A?

12. If the null space of a 5×6 matrix A is 4-dimensional, what is the dimension of the row space of A?

13. If A is a 7×5 matrix, what is the largest possible rank of A? If A is a 5×7 matrix, what is the largest possible rank of A? Explain your answers.

14. If A is a 4×3 matrix, what is the largest possible dimension of the row space of A? If A is a 3×4 matrix, what is the largest possible dimension of the row space of A? Explain.

15. If A is a 6×8 matrix, what is the smallest possible dimension of Nul A?

16. If A is a 6×4 matrix, what is the smallest possible dimension of Nul A?

In Exercises 17 and 18, A is an $m \times n$ matrix. Mark each statement True or False. Justify each answer.

17. a. The row space of A is the same as the column space of A^T.

b. If B is any echelon form of A, and if B has three nonzero rows, then the first three rows of A form a basis for Row A.

c. The dimensions of the row space and the column space of A are the same, even if A is not square.

d. The sum of the dimensions of the row space and the null space of A equals the number of rows in A.

e. On a computer, row operations can change the apparent rank of a matrix.

18. a. If B is any echelon form of A, then the pivot columns of B form a basis for the column space of A.

b. Row operations preserve the linear dependence relations among the rows of A.

c. The dimension of the null space of A is the number of columns of A that are *not* pivot columns.

d. The row space of A^T is the same as the column space of A.

e. If A and B are row equivalent, then their row spaces are the same.

19. Suppose the solutions of a homogeneous system of five linear equations in six unknowns are all multiples of one nonzero solution. Will the system necessarily have a solution for every possible choice of constants on the right sides of the equations? Explain.

20. Suppose a nonhomogeneous system of six linear equations in eight unknowns has a solution, with two free variables. Is it possible to change some constants on the equations' right sides to make the new system inconsistent? Explain.

21. Suppose a nonhomogeneous system of nine linear equations in ten unknowns has a solution for all possible constants on the right sides of the equations. Is it possible to find two nonzero solutions of the associated homogeneous system that are *not* multiples of each other? Discuss.

22. Is it possible that all solutions of a homogeneous system of ten linear equations in twelve variables are multiples of one fixed nonzero solution? Discuss.

23. A homogeneous system of twelve linear equations in eight unknowns has two fixed solutions that are not multiples of each other, and all other solutions are linear combinations of these two solutions. Can the set of all solutions be described with fewer than twelve homogeneous linear equations? If so, how many? Discuss.

24. Is it possible for a nonhomogeneous system of seven equations in six unknowns to have a unique solution for some right-hand side of constants? Is it possible for such a system to have a unique solution for every right-hand side? Explain.

25. A scientist solves a nonhomogeneous system of ten linear equations in twelve unknowns and finds that three of the unknowns are free variables. Can the scientist be certain that, if the right sides of the equations are changed, the new nonhomogeneous system will have a solution? Discuss.

26. In statistical theory, a common requirement is that a matrix be of *full rank*. That is, the rank should be as large as possible. Explain why an $m \times n$ matrix with more rows than columns has full rank if and only if its columns are linearly independent.

Exercises 27–29 concern an $m \times n$ matrix A and what are often called the *fundamental subspaces* determined by A.

27. Which of the subspaces Row A, Col A, Nul A, Row A^T, Col A^T, and Nul A^T are in $\mathbb{R}^m$ and which are in $\mathbb{R}^n$? How many distinct subspaces are in this list?

28. Justify the following equalities:

a. $\dim \text{Row } A + \dim \text{Nul } A = n$ Number of columns of A

b. $\dim \text{Col } A + \dim \text{Nul } A^T = m$ Number of rows of A

29. Use Exercise 28 to explain why the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has a solution for all $\mathbf{b}$ in $\mathbb{R}^m$ if and only if the equation $A^T\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ has only the trivial solution.

30. Suppose A is $m \times n$ and $\mathbf{b}$ is in $\mathbb{R}^m$. What has to be true about the two numbers rank $[\,A \quad \mathbf{b}\,]$ and rank A in order for the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ to be consistent?

Rank 1 matrices are important in some computer algorithms and several theoretical contexts, including the singular value decomposition in Chapter 7. It can be shown that an $m \times n$ matrix A has rank 1 if and only if it is an outer product; that is, $A = \mathbf{u}\mathbf{v}^T$ for some $\mathbf{u}$ in $\mathbb{R}^m$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Exercises 31–33 suggest why this property is true.

31. Verify that rank $\mathbf{u}\mathbf{v}^T \le 1$ if $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{bmatrix}$.

32. Let $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$. Find $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ such that $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 & 4 \\ 2 & -6 & 8 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{u}\mathbf{v}^T$.

33. Let A be any 2×3 matrix such that rank $A = 1$, let $\mathbf{u}$ be the first column of A, and suppose $\mathbf{u} \ne \mathbf{0}$. Explain why there is a vector $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ such that $A = \mathbf{u}\mathbf{v}^T$. How could this construction be modified if the first column of A were zero?

34. Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix of rank $r > 0$ and let U be an echelon form of A. Explain why there exists an invertible matrix E such that $A = EU$, and use this factorization to write A as the sum of r rank 1 matrices. [*Hint:* See Theorem 10 in Section 2.4.]

35. **[M]** Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 7 & -9 & -4 & 5 & 3 & -3 & -7 \\ -4 & 6 & 7 & -2 & -6 & -5 & 5 \\ 5 & -7 & -6 & 5 & -6 & 2 & 8 \\ -3 & 5 & 8 & -1 & -7 & -4 & 8 \\ 6 & -8 & -5 & 4 & 4 & 9 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$.

a. Construct matrices C and N whose columns are bases for Col A and Nul A, respectively, and construct a matrix R whose *rows* form a basis for Row A.

b. Construct a matrix M whose columns form a basis for Nul A^T, form the matrices $S = [\,R^T \quad N\,]$ and $T = [\,C \quad M\,]$, and explain why S and T should be square. Verify that both S and T are invertible.

36. **[M]** Repeat Exercise 35 for a random integer-valued 6×7 matrix A whose rank is at most 4. One way to make A is to create a random integer-valued 6×4 matrix J and a random integer-valued 4×7 matrix K, and set $A = JK$. (See Supplementary Exercise 12 at the end of the chapter; and see the *Study Guide* for matrix-generating programs.)

37. **[M]** Let A be the matrix in Exercise 35. Construct a matrix C whose columns are the pivot columns of A, and construct a matrix R whose rows are the nonzero rows of the reduced echelon form of A. Compute CR, and discuss what you see.

38. **[M]** Repeat Exercise 37 for three random integer-valued 5×7 matrices A whose ranks are 5, 4, and 3. Make a conjecture about how CR is related to A for any matrix A. Prove your conjecture.

SOLUTIONS TO PRACTICE PROBLEMS

1. A has two pivot columns, so rank $A = 2$. Since A has 5 columns altogether, dim Nul $A = 5 - 2 = 3$.

2. The pivot columns of A are the first two columns. So a basis for Col A is

$$\{\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_2\} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -7 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \\ 8 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

The nonzero rows of B form a basis for Row A, namely, $\{(1, -2, -4, 3, -2), (0, 3, 9, -12, 12)\}$. In this particular example, it happens that any two rows of A form a basis for the row space, because the row space is two-dimensional and none of the rows of A is a multiple of another row. In general, the nonzero rows of an echelon form of A should be used as a basis for Row A, not the rows of A itself.

3. For Nul A, the next step is to perform row operations on B to obtain the reduced echelon form of A.

4. Rank A^T = rank A, by the Rank Theorem, because Col A^T = Row A. So A^T has two pivot positions.

SG Major Review of Key Concepts 4–22

4.7 CHANGE OF BASIS

When a basis $\mathcal{B}$ is chosen for an n-dimensional vector space V, the associated coordinate mapping onto $\mathbb{R}^n$ provides a coordinate system for V. Each $\mathbf{x}$ in V is identified uniquely by its $\mathcal{B}$-coordinate vector $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}}$.[1]

In some applications, a problem is described initially using a basis $\mathcal{B}$, but the problem's solution is aided by changing $\mathcal{B}$ to a new basis $\mathcal{C}$. (Examples will be given in Chapters 5 and 7.) Each vector is assigned a new $\mathcal{C}$-coordinate vector. In this section, we study how $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{C}}$ and $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}}$ are related for each $\mathbf{x}$ in V.

To visualize the problem, consider the two coordinate systems in Figure 1. In Figure 1(a), $\mathbf{x} = 3\mathbf{b}_1 + \mathbf{b}_2$, while in Figure 1(b), the same $\mathbf{x}$ is shown as $\mathbf{x} = 6\mathbf{c}_1 + 4\mathbf{c}_2$. That is,

$$[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad [\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{C}} = \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

Our problem is to find the connection between the two coordinate vectors. Example 1 shows how to do this, provided we know how $\mathbf{b}_1$ and $\mathbf{b}_2$ are formed from $\mathbf{c}_1$ and $\mathbf{c}_2$.

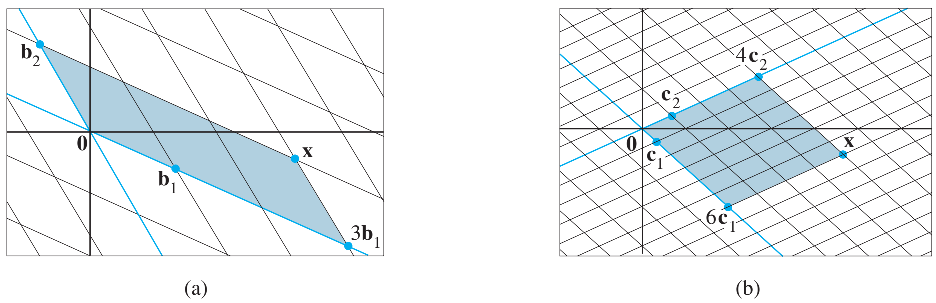


FIGURE 1 Two coordinate systems for the same vector space.

EXAMPLE 1 Consider two bases $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2\}$ and $\mathcal{C} = \{\mathbf{c}_1, \mathbf{c}_2\}$ for a vector space V, such that

$$\mathbf{b}_1 = 4\mathbf{c}_1 + \mathbf{c}_2 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{b}_2 = -6\mathbf{c}_1 + \mathbf{c}_2 \tag{1}$$

Suppose

$$\mathbf{x} = 3\mathbf{b}_1 + \mathbf{b}_2 \tag{2}$$

That is, suppose $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$. Find $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{C}}$.

SOLUTION Apply the coordinate mapping determined by $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathbf{x}$ in (2). Since the coordinate mapping is a linear transformation,

$$\begin{aligned} [\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{C}} &= [\,3\mathbf{b}_1 + \mathbf{b}_2\,]_{\mathcal{C}} \\ &= 3[\,\mathbf{b}_1\,]_{\mathcal{C}} + [\,\mathbf{b}_2\,]_{\mathcal{C}} \end{aligned}$$

We can write this vector equation as a matrix equation, using the vectors in the linear combination as the columns of a matrix:

$$[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{C}} = \begin{bmatrix} [\,\mathbf{b}_1\,]_{\mathcal{C}} & [\,\mathbf{b}_2\,]_{\mathcal{C}} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \tag{3}$$

[1] Think of $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}}$ as a "name" for $\mathbf{x}$ that lists the weights used to build $\mathbf{x}$ as a linear combination of the basis vectors in $\mathcal{B}$.

This formula gives $[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{C}}$, once we know the columns of the matrix. From (1),

$$[\mathbf{b}_1]_{\mathcal{C}} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad [\mathbf{b}_2]_{\mathcal{C}} = \begin{bmatrix} -6 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus (3) provides the solution:

$$[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{C}} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -6 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

The $\mathcal{C}$-coordinates of $\mathbf{x}$ match those of the $\mathbf{x}$ in Figure 1. ■

The argument used to derive formula (3) can be generalized to yield the following result. (See Exercises 15 and 16.)

THEOREM 15

Let $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \dots, \mathbf{b}_n\}$ and $\mathcal{C} = \{\mathbf{c}_1, \dots, \mathbf{c}_n\}$ be bases of a vector space V. Then there is a unique $n \times n$ matrix $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ such that

$$[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{C}} = \underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{B}} \tag{4}$$

The columns of $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ are the $\mathcal{C}$-coordinate vectors of the vectors in the basis $\mathcal{B}$. That is,

$$\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P} = \begin{bmatrix} [\mathbf{b}_1]_{\mathcal{C}} & [\mathbf{b}_2]_{\mathcal{C}} & \cdots & [\mathbf{b}_n]_{\mathcal{C}} \end{bmatrix} \tag{5}$$

The matrix $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ in Theorem 15 is called the **change-of-coordinates matrix from $\mathcal{B}$ to $\mathcal{C}$**. Multiplication by $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ converts $\mathcal{B}$-coordinates into $\mathcal{C}$-coordinates.[2] Figure 2 illustrates the change-of-coordinates equation (4).

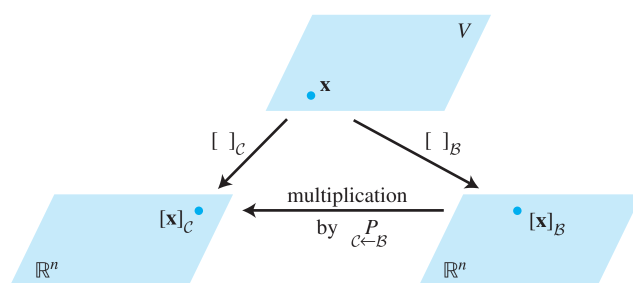


FIGURE 2 Two coordinate systems for V.

The columns of $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ are linearly independent because they are the coordinate vectors of the linearly independent set $\mathcal{B}$. (See Exercise 25 in Section 4.4.) Since $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ is square, it must be invertible, by the Invertible Matrix Theorem. Left-multiplying both sides of equation (4) by $(\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P})^{-1}$ yields

$$(\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P})^{-1}[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{C}} = [\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{B}}$$

[2] To remember how to construct the matrix, think of $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{B}}$ as a linear combination of the columns of $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$. The matrix-vector product is a $\mathcal{C}$-coordinate vector, so the columns of $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ should be $\mathcal{C}$-coordinate vectors, too.

Thus $(\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P})^{-1}$ is the matrix that converts $\mathcal{C}$-coordinates into $\mathcal{B}$-coordinates. That is,

$$(\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P})^{-1} = \underset{\mathcal{B}\leftarrow\mathcal{C}}{P} \tag{6}$$

Change of Basis in $\mathbb{R}^n$

If $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{b}_n\}$ and $\mathcal{E}$ is the *standard basis* $\{\mathbf{e}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{e}_n\}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$, then $[\mathbf{b}_1]_\mathcal{E} = \mathbf{b}_1$, and likewise for the other vectors in $\mathcal{B}$. In this case, $\underset{\mathcal{E}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ is the same as the change-of-coordinates matrix $P_\mathcal{B}$ introduced in Section 4.4, namely,

$$P_\mathcal{B} = [\,\mathbf{b}_1 \quad \mathbf{b}_2 \quad \cdots \quad \mathbf{b}_n\,]$$

To change coordinates between two nonstandard bases in $\mathbb{R}^n$, we need Theorem 15. The theorem shows that to solve the change-of-basis problem, we need the coordinate vectors of the old basis relative to the new basis.

EXAMPLE 2 Let $\mathbf{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} -9 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -5 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{c}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -4 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{c}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix}$, and consider the bases for $\mathbb{R}^2$ given by $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2\}$ and $\mathcal{C} = \{\mathbf{c}_1, \mathbf{c}_2\}$. Find the change-of-coordinates matrix from $\mathcal{B}$ to $\mathcal{C}$.

SOLUTION The matrix $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ involves the $\mathcal{C}$-coordinate vectors of $\mathbf{b}_1$ and $\mathbf{b}_2$. Let $[\,\mathbf{b}_1\,]_\mathcal{C} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $[\,\mathbf{b}_2\,]_\mathcal{C} = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix}$. Then, by definition,

$$[\,\mathbf{c}_1 \quad \mathbf{c}_2\,]\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{b}_1 \quad \text{and} \quad [\,\mathbf{c}_1 \quad \mathbf{c}_2\,]\begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{b}_2$$

To solve both systems simultaneously, augment the coefficient matrix with $\mathbf{b}_1$ *and* $\mathbf{b}_2$, and row reduce:

$$[\,\mathbf{c}_1 \quad \mathbf{c}_2 \;\vdots\; \mathbf{b}_1 \quad \mathbf{b}_2\,] = \left[\begin{array}{cc:cc} 1 & 3 & -9 & -5 \\ -4 & -5 & 1 & -1 \end{array}\right] \sim \left[\begin{array}{cc:cc} 1 & 0 & 6 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & -5 & -3 \end{array}\right] \tag{7}$$

Thus

$$[\,\mathbf{b}_1\,]_\mathcal{C} = \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad [\,\mathbf{b}_2\,]_\mathcal{C} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

The desired change-of-coordinates matrix is therefore

$$\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P} = [\,[\,\mathbf{b}_1\,]_\mathcal{C} \quad [\,\mathbf{b}_2\,]_\mathcal{C}\,] = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 4 \\ -5 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$ ■

Observe that the matrix $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ in Example 2 already appeared in (7). This is not surprising because the first column of $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ results from row reducing $[\,\mathbf{c}_1 \quad \mathbf{c}_2 \;\vdots\; \mathbf{b}_1\,]$ to $[\,I \;\vdots\; [\,\mathbf{b}_1\,]_\mathcal{C}\,]$, and similarly for the second column of $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$. Thus

$$[\,\mathbf{c}_1 \quad \mathbf{c}_2 \;\vdots\; \mathbf{b}_1 \quad \mathbf{b}_2\,] \sim [\,I \;\vdots\; \underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}\,]$$

An analogous procedure works for finding the change-of-coordinates matrix between any two bases in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

EXAMPLE 3 Let $\mathbf{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{c}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} -7 \\ 9 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{c}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -5 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}$, and consider the bases for $\mathbb{R}^2$ given by $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2\}$ and $\mathcal{C} = \{\mathbf{c}_1, \mathbf{c}_2\}$.

a. Find the change-of-coordinates matrix from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{B}$.

b. Find the change-of-coordinates matrix from $\mathcal{B}$ to $\mathcal{C}$.

SOLUTION

a. Notice that $\underset{\mathcal{B}\leftarrow\mathcal{C}}{P}$ is needed rather than $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$, and compute

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{b}_1 & \mathbf{b}_2 & \vdots & \mathbf{c}_1 & \mathbf{c}_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & \vdots & -7 & -5 \\ -3 & 4 & \vdots & 9 & 7 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & \vdots & 5 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & \vdots & 6 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

So

$$\underset{\mathcal{B}\leftarrow\mathcal{C}}{P} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 3 \\ 6 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

b. By part (a) and property (6) above (with $\mathcal{B}$ and $\mathcal{C}$ interchanged),

$$\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P} = (\underset{\mathcal{B}\leftarrow\mathcal{C}}{P})^{-1} = \frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 4 & -3 \\ -6 & 5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3/2 \\ -3 & 5/2 \end{bmatrix}$$ ■

Another description of the change-of-coordinates matrix $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ uses the change-of-coordinate matrices $P_{\mathcal{B}}$ and $P_{\mathcal{C}}$ that convert $\mathcal{B}$-coordinates and $\mathcal{C}$-coordinates, respectively, into standard coordinates. Recall that for each $\mathbf{x}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$,

$$P_{\mathcal{B}}[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \mathbf{x}, \quad P_{\mathcal{C}}[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{C}} = \mathbf{x}, \quad \text{and} \quad [\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{C}} = P_{\mathcal{C}}^{-1}\mathbf{x}$$

Thus

$$[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{C}} = P_{\mathcal{C}}^{-1}\mathbf{x} = P_{\mathcal{C}}^{-1}P_{\mathcal{B}}[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{B}}$$

In $\mathbb{R}^n$, the change-of-coordinates matrix $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ may be computed as $P_{\mathcal{C}}^{-1}P_{\mathcal{B}}$. Actually, for matrices larger than 2×2, an algorithm analogous to the one in Example 3 is faster than computing $P_{\mathcal{C}}^{-1}$ and then $P_{\mathcal{C}}^{-1}P_{\mathcal{B}}$. See Exercise 12 in Section 2.2.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

1. Let $\mathcal{F} = \{\mathbf{f}_1, \mathbf{f}_2\}$ and $\mathcal{G} = \{\mathbf{g}_1, \mathbf{g}_2\}$ be bases for a vector space V, and let P be a matrix whose columns are $[\mathbf{f}_1]_{\mathcal{G}}$ and $[\mathbf{f}_2]_{\mathcal{G}}$. Which of the following equations is satisfied by P for all $\mathbf{v}$ in V?

   (i) $[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{F}} = P[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{G}}$ (ii) $[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{G}} = P[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{F}}$

2. Let $\mathcal{B}$ and $\mathcal{C}$ be as in Example 1. Use the results of that example to find the change-of-coordinates matrix from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{B}$.

4.7 EXERCISES

1. Let $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2\}$ and $\mathcal{C} = \{\mathbf{c}_1, \mathbf{c}_2\}$ be bases for a vector space V, and suppose $\mathbf{b}_1 = 6\mathbf{c}_1 - 2\mathbf{c}_2$ and $\mathbf{b}_2 = 9\mathbf{c}_1 - 4\mathbf{c}_2$.
   a. Find the change-of-coordinates matrix from $\mathcal{B}$ to $\mathcal{C}$.
   b. Find $[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{C}}$ for $\mathbf{x} = -3\mathbf{b}_1 + 2\mathbf{b}_2$. Use part (a).

2. Let $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2\}$ and $\mathcal{C} = \{\mathbf{c}_1, \mathbf{c}_2\}$ be bases for a vector space V, and suppose $\mathbf{b}_1 = -\mathbf{c}_1 + 4\mathbf{c}_2$ and $\mathbf{b}_2 = 5\mathbf{c}_1 - 3\mathbf{c}_2$.
   a. Find the change-of-coordinates matrix from $\mathcal{B}$ to $\mathcal{C}$.
   b. Find $[\mathbf{x}]_{\mathcal{C}}$ for $\mathbf{x} = 5\mathbf{b}_1 + 3\mathbf{b}_2$.

3. Let $\mathcal{U} = \{\mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_2\}$ and $\mathcal{W} = \{\mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2\}$ be bases for V, and let P be a matrix whose columns are $[\mathbf{u}_1]_{\mathcal{W}}$ and $[\mathbf{u}_2]_{\mathcal{W}}$. Which of the following equations is satisfied by P for all $\mathbf{x}$ in V?

(i) $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{U}} = P[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{W}}$ (ii) $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{W}} = P[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{U}}$

4. Let $\mathcal{A} = \{\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_2, \mathbf{a}_3\}$ and $\mathcal{D} = \{\mathbf{d}_1, \mathbf{d}_2, \mathbf{d}_3\}$ be bases for V, and let $P = [\,[\mathbf{d}_1]_{\mathcal{A}} \;\; [\mathbf{d}_2]_{\mathcal{A}} \;\; [\mathbf{d}_3]_{\mathcal{A}}\,]$. Which of the following equations is satisfied by P for all $\mathbf{x}$ in V?

(i) $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{A}} = P[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{D}}$ (ii) $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{D}} = P[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{A}}$

5. Let $\mathcal{A} = \{\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_2, \mathbf{a}_3\}$ and $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2, \mathbf{b}_3\}$ be bases for a vector space V, and suppose $\mathbf{a}_1 = 4\mathbf{b}_1 - \mathbf{b}_2$, $\mathbf{a}_2 = -\mathbf{b}_1 + \mathbf{b}_2 + \mathbf{b}_3$, and $\mathbf{a}_3 = \mathbf{b}_2 - 2\mathbf{b}_3$.

a. Find the change-of-coordinates matrix from $\mathcal{A}$ to $\mathcal{B}$.

b. Find $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}}$ for $\mathbf{x} = 3\mathbf{a}_1 + 4\mathbf{a}_2 + \mathbf{a}_3$.

6. Let $\mathcal{D} = \{\mathbf{d}_1, \mathbf{d}_2, \mathbf{d}_3\}$ and $\mathcal{F} = \{\mathbf{f}_1, \mathbf{f}_2, \mathbf{f}_3\}$ be bases for a vector space V, and suppose $\mathbf{f}_1 = 2\mathbf{d}_1 - \mathbf{d}_2 + \mathbf{d}_3$, $\mathbf{f}_2 = 3\mathbf{d}_2 + \mathbf{d}_3$, and $\mathbf{f}_3 = -3\mathbf{d}_1 + 2\mathbf{d}_3$.

a. Find the change-of-coordinates matrix from $\mathcal{F}$ to $\mathcal{D}$.

b. Find $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{D}}$ for $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{f}_1 - 2\mathbf{f}_2 + 2\mathbf{f}_3$.

In Exercises 7–10, let $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2\}$ and $\mathcal{C} = \{\mathbf{c}_1, \mathbf{c}_2\}$ be bases for $\mathbb{R}^2$. In each exercise, find the change-of-coordinates matrix from $\mathcal{B}$ to $\mathcal{C}$ and the change-of-coordinates matrix from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{B}$.

7. $\mathbf{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 7 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{c}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{c}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$

8. $\mathbf{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 8 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{c}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{c}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

9. $\mathbf{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} -6 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{c}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{c}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$

10. $\mathbf{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 7 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{c}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{c}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 11 and 12, $\mathcal{B}$ and $\mathcal{C}$ are bases for a vector space V. Mark each statement True or False. Justify each answer.

11. a. The columns of the change-of-coordinates matrix $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ are $\mathcal{B}$-coordinate vectors of the vectors in $\mathcal{C}$.

b. If $V = \mathbb{R}^n$ and $\mathcal{C}$ is the *standard* basis for V, then $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ is the same as the change-of-coordinates matrix $P_{\mathcal{B}}$ introduced in Section 4.4.

12. a. The columns of $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ are linearly independent.

b. If $V = \mathbb{R}^2$, $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2\}$, and $\mathcal{C} = \{\mathbf{c}_1, \mathbf{c}_2\}$, then row reduction of $[\,\mathbf{c}_1 \;\; \mathbf{c}_2 \;\; \mathbf{b}_1 \;\; \mathbf{b}_2\,]$ to $[\,I \;\; P\,]$ produces a matrix P that satisfies $[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{B}} = P[\,\mathbf{x}\,]_{\mathcal{C}}$ for all $\mathbf{x}$ in V.

13. In $\mathbb{P}_2$, find the change-of-coordinates matrix from the basis $\mathcal{B} = \{1 - 2t + t^2, 3 - 5t + 4t^2, 2t + 3t^2\}$ to the standard basis $\mathcal{C} = \{1, t, t^2\}$. Then find the $\mathcal{B}$-coordinate vector for $-1 + 2t$.

14. In $\mathbb{P}_2$, find the change-of-coordinates matrix from the basis $\mathcal{B} = \{1 - 3t^2, 2 + t - 5t^2, 1 + 2t\}$ to the standard basis. Then write t^2 as a linear combination of the polynomials in $\mathcal{B}$.

Exercises 15 and 16 provide a proof of Theorem 15. Fill in a justification for each step.

15. Given $\mathbf{v}$ in V, there exist scalars $x_1, \dots, x_n$, such that

$$\mathbf{v} = x_1\mathbf{b}_1 + x_2\mathbf{b}_2 + \cdots + x_n\mathbf{b}_n$$

because (a) _____. Apply the coordinate mapping determined by the basis $\mathcal{C}$, and obtain

$$[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{C}} = x_1[\mathbf{b}_1]_{\mathcal{C}} + x_2[\mathbf{b}_2]_{\mathcal{C}} + \cdots + x_n[\mathbf{b}_n]_{\mathcal{C}}$$

because (b) _____. This equation may be written in the form

$$[\,\mathbf{v}\,]_{\mathcal{C}} = \big[\,[\,\mathbf{b}_1\,]_{\mathcal{C}} \quad [\,\mathbf{b}_2\,]_{\mathcal{C}} \quad \cdots \quad [\,\mathbf{b}_n\,]_{\mathcal{C}}\,\big] \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} \tag{8}$$

by the definition of (c) _____. This shows that the matrix $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ shown in (5) satisfies $[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{C}} = \underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{B}}$ for each $\mathbf{v}$ in V, because the vector on the right side of (8) is (d) _____.

16. Suppose Q is any matrix such that

$$[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{C}} = Q[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{B}} \quad \text{for each } \mathbf{v} \text{ in } V \tag{9}$$

Set $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{b}_1$ in (9). Then (9) shows that $[\mathbf{b}_1]_{\mathcal{C}}$ is the first column of Q because (a) _____. Similarly, for $k = 2, \dots, n$, the kth column of Q is (b) _____ because (c) _____. This shows that the matrix $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ defined by (5) in Theorem 15 is the only matrix that satisfies condition (4).

17. [**M**] Let $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{x}_0, \dots, \mathbf{x}_6\}$ and $C = \{\mathbf{y}_0, \dots, \mathbf{y}_6\}$, where $\mathbf{x}_k$ is the function $\cos^k t$ and $\mathbf{y}_k$ is the function $\cos kt$. Exercise 34 in Section 4.5 showed that both $\mathcal{B}$ and $\mathcal{C}$ are bases for the vector space $H = \text{Span}\,\{\mathbf{x}_0, \dots, \mathbf{x}_6\}$.

a. Set $P = \big[\,[\,\mathbf{y}_0\,]_{\mathcal{B}} \quad \cdots \quad [\,\mathbf{y}_6\,]_{\mathcal{B}}\,\big]$, and calculate P^{-1}.

b. Explain why the columns of P^{-1} are the $\mathcal{C}$-coordinate vectors of $\mathbf{x}_0, \dots, \mathbf{x}_6$. Then use these coordinate vectors to write trigonometric identities that express powers of $\cos t$ in terms of the functions in $\mathcal{C}$.

See the *Study Guide*.

18. [**M**] (*Calculus required*)[3] Recall from calculus that integrals such as

$$\int (5\cos^3 t - 6\cos^4 t + 5\cos^5 t - 12\cos^6 t)\, dt \tag{10}$$

are tedious to compute. (The usual method is to apply integration by parts repeatedly and use the half-angle formula.) Use the matrix P or P^{-1} from Exercise 17 to transform (10); then compute the integral.

[3] The idea for Exercises 17 and 18 and five related exercises in earlier sections came from a paper by Jack W. Rogers, Jr., of Auburn University, presented at a meeting of the International Linear Algebra Society, August 1995. See "Applications of Linear Algebra in Calculus," *American Mathematical Monthly* **104** (1), 1997.

19. [M] Let

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ -3 & -5 & 0 \\ 4 & 6 & 1 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -8 \\ 5 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} -7 \\ 2 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

a. Find a basis $\{\mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_2, \mathbf{u}_3\}$ for $\mathbb{R}^3$ such that P is the change-of-coordinates matrix from $\{\mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_2, \mathbf{u}_3\}$ to the basis $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$. [*Hint:* What do the columns of $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ represent?]

b. Find a basis $\{\mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \mathbf{w}_3\}$ for $\mathbb{R}^3$ such that P is the change-of-coordinates matrix from $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$ to $\{\mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \mathbf{w}_3\}$.

20. Let $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \mathbf{b}_2\}$, $\mathcal{C} = \{\mathbf{c}_1, \mathbf{c}_2\}$, and $\mathcal{D} = \{\mathbf{d}_1, \mathbf{d}_2\}$ be bases for a two-dimensional vector space.

a. Write an equation that relates the matrices $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$, $\underset{\mathcal{D}\leftarrow\mathcal{C}}{P}$, and $\underset{\mathcal{D}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$. Justify your result.

b. [M] Use a matrix program either to help you find the equation or to check the equation you write. Work with three bases for $\mathbb{R}^2$. (See Exercises 7–10.)

SOLUTIONS TO PRACTICE PROBLEMS

1. Since the columns of P are $\mathcal{G}$-coordinate vectors, a vector of the form $P\mathbf{x}$ must be a $\mathcal{G}$-coordinate vector. Thus P satisfies equation (ii).
2. The coordinate vectors found in Example 1 show that

$$\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P} = \begin{bmatrix} [\mathbf{b}_1]_{\mathcal{C}} & [\mathbf{b}_2]_{\mathcal{C}} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -6 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Hence

$$\underset{\mathcal{B}\leftarrow\mathcal{C}}{P} = (\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P})^{-1} = \frac{1}{10}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 6 \\ -1 & 4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .1 & .6 \\ -.1 & .4 \end{bmatrix}$$

4.8 APPLICATIONS TO DIFFERENCE EQUATIONS

Now that powerful computers are widely available, more and more scientific and engineering problems are being treated in a way that uses discrete, or digital, data rather than continuous data. Difference equations are often the appropriate tool to analyze such data. Even when a differential equation is used to model a continuous process, a numerical solution is often produced from a related difference equation.

This section highlights some fundamental properties of linear difference equations that are best explained using linear algebra.

Discrete-Time Signals

The vector space $\mathbb{S}$ of discrete-time signals was introduced in Section 4.1. A **signal** in $\mathbb{S}$ is a function defined only on the integers and is visualized as a sequence of numbers, say, $\{y_k\}$. Figure 1 shows three typical signals whose general terms are $(.7)^k$, 1^k, and $(-1)^k$, respectively.

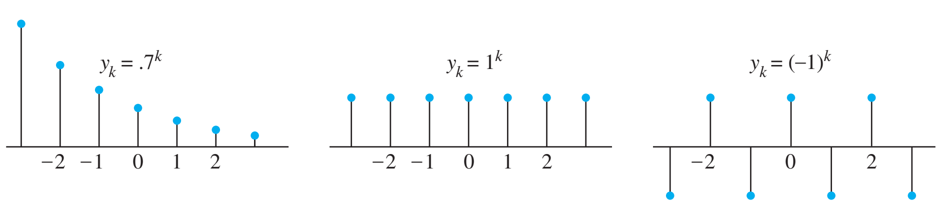


FIGURE 1 Three signals in $\mathbb{S}$.

Digital signals obviously arise in electrical and control systems engineering, but discrete-data sequences are also generated in biology, physics, economics, demography, and many other areas, wherever a process is measured, or *sampled*, at discrete time intervals. When a process begins at a specific time, it is sometimes convenient to write a signal as a sequence of the form $(y_0, y_1, y_2, \ldots)$. The terms y_k for $k < 0$ either are assumed to be zero or are simply omitted.

EXAMPLE 1 The crystal-clear sounds from a compact disc player are produced from music that has been sampled at the rate of 44,100 times per second. See Figure 2. At each measurement, the amplitude of the music signal is recorded as a number, say, y_k. The original music is composed of many different sounds of varying frequencies, yet the sequence $\{y_k\}$ contains enough information to reproduce all the frequencies in the sound up to about 20,000 cycles per second, higher than the human ear can sense. ■

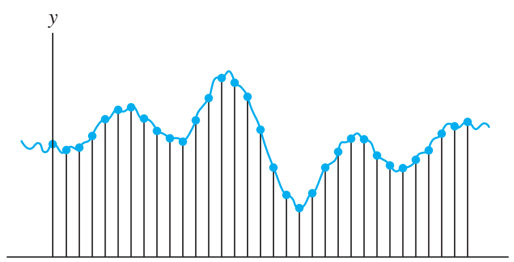


FIGURE 2 Sampled data from a music signal.

Linear Independence in the Space $\mathbb{S}$ of Signals

To simplify notation, we consider a set of only three signals in $\mathbb{S}$, say, $\{u_k\}$, $\{v_k\}$, and $\{w_k\}$. They are linearly independent precisely when the equation

$$c_1 u_k + c_2 v_k + c_3 w_k = 0 \quad \text{for all } k \tag{1}$$

implies that $c_1 = c_2 = c_3 = 0$. The phrase "for all k" means for all integers—positive, negative, and zero. One could also consider signals that start with $k = 0$, for example, in which case, "for all k" would mean for all integers $k \geq 0$.

Suppose c_1, c_2, c_3 satisfy (1). Then equation (1) holds for any three consecutive values of k, say, k, $k + 1$, and $k + 2$. Thus (1) implies that

$$c_1 u_{k+1} + c_2 v_{k+1} + c_3 w_{k+1} = 0 \quad \text{for all } k$$

and

$$c_1 u_{k+2} + c_2 v_{k+2} + c_3 w_{k+2} = 0 \quad \text{for all } k$$

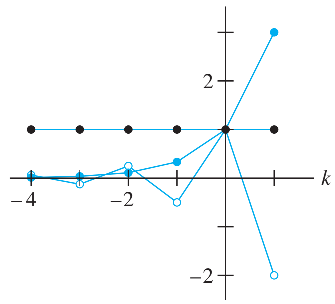
Hence c_1, c_2, c_3 satisfy

$$\begin{bmatrix} u_k & v_k & w_k \\ u_{k+1} & v_{k+1} & w_{k+1} \\ u_{k+2} & v_{k+2} & w_{k+2} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} c_1 \\ c_2 \\ c_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{for all } k \tag{2}$$

SG The Casorati Test 4–30

The coefficient matrix in this system is called the **Casorati matrix** of the signals, and the determinant of the matrix is called the **Casoratian** of $\{u_k\}$, $\{v_k\}$, and $\{w_k\}$. If the Casorati matrix is invertible for at least one value of k, then (2) will imply that $c_1 = c_2 = c_3 = 0$, which will prove that the three signals are linearly independent.

EXAMPLE 2 Verify that 1^k, $(-2)^k$, and 3^k are linearly independent signals.



The signals 1^k, $(-2)^k$, and 3^k.

SOLUTION The Casorati matrix is

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1^k & (-2)^k & 3^k \\ 1^{k+1} & (-2)^{k+1} & 3^{k+1} \\ 1^{k+2} & (-2)^{k+2} & 3^{k+2} \end{bmatrix}$$

Row operations can show fairly easily that this matrix is always invertible. However, it is faster to substitute a value for k—say, $k = 0$—and row reduce the numerical matrix:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 & 3 \\ 1 & 4 & 9 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & -3 & 2 \\ 0 & 3 & 8 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & -3 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

The Casorati matrix is invertible for $k = 0$. So 1^k, $(-2)^k$, and 3^k are linearly independent. ■

If a Casorati matrix is not invertible, the associated signals being tested may or may not be linearly dependent. (See Exercise 33.) However, it can be shown that if the signals are all solutions of the *same* homogeneous difference equation (described below), then either the Casorati matrix is invertible for all k and the signals are linearly independent, or else the Casorati matrix is not invertible for all k and the signals are linearly dependent. A nice proof using linear transformations is in the *Study Guide*.

Linear Difference Equations

Given scalars $a_0, \dots, a_n$, with a_0 and a_n nonzero, and given a signal $\{z_k\}$, the equation

$$a_0 y_{k+n} + a_1 y_{k+n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1} y_{k+1} + a_n y_k = z_k \quad \text{for all } k \tag{3}$$

is called a **linear difference equation** (or **linear recurrence relation**) **of order** $\boldsymbol{n}$. For simplicity, a_0 is often taken equal to 1. If $\{z_k\}$ is the zero sequence, the equation is **homogeneous**; otherwise, the equation is **nonhomogeneous**.

EXAMPLE 3 In digital signal processing, a difference equation such as (3) describes a **linear filter**, and $a_0, \dots, a_n$ are called the **filter coefficients**. If $\{y_k\}$ is treated as the input and $\{z_k\}$ as the output, then the solutions of the associated homogeneous equation are the signals that are filtered *out* and transformed into the zero signal. Let us feed two different signals into the filter

$$.35y_{k+2} + .5y_{k+1} + .35y_k = z_k$$

Here .35 is an abbreviation for $\sqrt{2}/4$. The first signal is created by sampling the continuous signal $y = \cos(\pi t/4)$ at integer values of t, as in Figure 3(a). The discrete signal is

$$\{y_k\} = \{\dots, \cos(0), \cos(\pi/4), \cos(2\pi/4), \cos(3\pi/4), \dots\}$$

For simplicity, write $\pm.7$ in place of $\pm\sqrt{2}/2$, so that

$$\{y_k\} = \{\dots, \underset{\substack{\uparrow \\ k=0}}{1}, .7, 0, -.7, -1, -.7, 0, .7, 1, .7, 0, \dots\}$$

Table 1 shows a calculation of the output sequence $\{z_k\}$, where .35(.7) is an abbreviation for $(\sqrt{2}/4)(\sqrt{2}/2) = .25$. The output is $\{y_k\}$, shifted by one term.

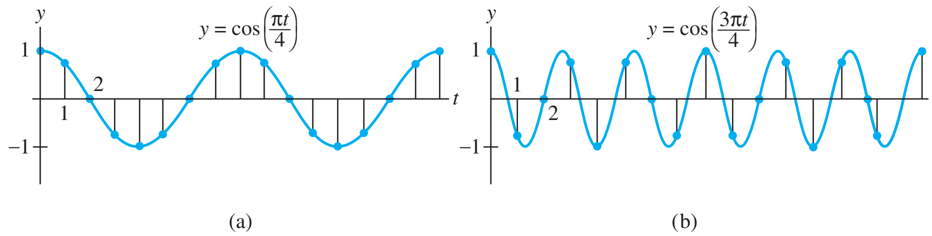


FIGURE 3 Discrete signals with different frequencies.

TABLE 1 Computing the Output of a Filter

k	y_k	y_{k+1}	y_{k+2}	$.35y_k$	$+\ .5y_{k+1}$	$+\ .35y_{k+2}$	$=$	z_k
0	1	.7	0	.35(1)	+ .5(.7)	+ .35(0)	=	.7
1	.7	0	−.7	.35(.7)	+ .5(0)	+ .35(−.7)	=	0
2	0	−.7	−1	.35(0)	+ .5(−.7)	+ .35(−1)	=	−.7
3	−.7	−1	−.7	.35(−.7)	+ .5(−1)	+ .35(−.7)	=	−1
4	−1	−.7	0	.35(−1)	+ .5(−.7)	+ .35(0)	=	−.7
5	−.7	0	.7	.35(−.7)	+ .5(0)	+ .35(.7)	=	0
⋮	⋮							⋮

A different input signal is produced from the higher frequency signal $y = \cos(3\pi t/4)$, shown in Figure 3(b). Sampling at the same rate as before produces a new input sequence:

$$\{w_k\} = \{\ldots, \underset{\substack{\uparrow \\ k=0}}{1}, -.7, 0, .7, -1, .7, 0, -.7, 1, -.7, 0, \ldots\}$$

When $\{w_k\}$ is fed into the filter, the output is the zero sequence. The filter, called a *low-pass filter*, lets $\{y_k\}$ pass through, but stops the higher frequency $\{w_k\}$. ∎

In many applications, a sequence $\{z_k\}$ is specified for the right side of a difference equation (3), and a $\{y_k\}$ that satisfies (3) is called a **solution** of the equation. The next example shows how to find solutions for a homogeneous equation.

EXAMPLE 4 Solutions of a homogeneous difference equation often have the form $y_k = r^k$ for some r. Find some solutions of the equation

$$y_{k+3} - 2y_{k+2} - 5y_{k+1} + 6y_k = 0 \quad \text{for all } k \tag{4}$$

SOLUTION Substitute r^k for y_k in the equation and factor the left side:

$$r^{k+3} - 2r^{k+2} - 5r^{k+1} + 6r^k = 0 \tag{5}$$

$$r^k(r^3 - 2r^2 - 5r + 6) = 0$$

$$r^k(r-1)(r+2)(r-3) = 0 \tag{6}$$

Since (5) is equivalent to (6), r^k satisfies the difference equation (4) if and only if r satisfies (6). Thus 1^k, $(-2)^k$, and 3^k are all solutions of (4). For instance, to verify that 3^k is a solution of (4), compute

$$3^{k+3} - 2\cdot 3^{k+2} - 5\cdot 3^{k+1} + 6\cdot 3^k$$

$$= 3^k(27 - 18 - 15 + 6) = 0 \quad \text{for all } k$$ ∎

In general, a nonzero signal r^k satisfies the homogeneous difference equation

$$y_{k+n} + a_1 y_{k+n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1} y_{k+1} + a_n y_k = 0 \quad \text{for all } k$$

if and only if r is a root of the **auxiliary equation**

$$r^n + a_1 r^{n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1} r + a_n = 0$$

We will not consider the case in which r is a repeated root of the auxiliary equation. When the auxiliary equation has a *complex root*, the difference equation has solutions of the form $s^k \cos k\omega$ and $s^k \sin k\omega$, for constants s and ω. This happened in Example 3.

Solution Sets of Linear Difference Equations

Given $a_1, \ldots, a_n$, consider the mapping $T : \mathbb{S} \to \mathbb{S}$ that transforms a signal $\{y_k\}$ into a signal $\{w_k\}$ given by

$$w_k = y_{k+n} + a_1 y_{k+n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1} y_{k+1} + a_n y_k$$

It is readily checked that T is a *linear* transformation. This implies that the solution set of the homogeneous equation

$$y_{k+n} + a_1 y_{k+n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1} y_{k+1} + a_n y_k = 0 \quad \text{for all } k$$

is the kernel of T (the set of signals that T maps into the zero signal), and hence the solution set is a *subspace* of $\mathbb{S}$. Any linear combination of solutions is again a solution.

The next theorem, a simple but basic result, will lead to more information about the solution sets of difference equations.

THEOREM 16

If $a_n \neq 0$ and if $\{z_k\}$ is given, the equation

$$y_{k+n} + a_1 y_{k+n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1} y_{k+1} + a_n y_k = z_k \quad \text{for all } k \tag{7}$$

has a unique solution whenever $y_0, \ldots, y_{n-1}$ are specified.

PROOF If $y_0, \ldots, y_{n-1}$ are specified, use (7) to *define*

$$y_n = z_0 - [\, a_1 y_{n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1} y_1 + a_n y_0 \,]$$

And now that $y_1, \ldots, y_n$ are specified, use (7) to define y_{n+1}. In general, use the recurrence relation

$$y_{n+k} = z_k - [\, a_1 y_{k+n-1} + \cdots + a_n y_k \,] \tag{8}$$

to define y_{n+k} for $k \geq 0$. To define y_k for $k < 0$, use the recurrence relation

$$y_k = \frac{1}{a_n} z_k - \frac{1}{a_n} [\, y_{k+n} + a_1 y_{k+n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1} y_{k+1} \,] \tag{9}$$

This produces a signal that satisfies (7). Conversely, any signal that satisfies (7) for all k certainly satisfies (8) and (9), so the solution of (7) is unique. ■

THEOREM 17

The set H of all solutions of the nth-order homogeneous linear difference equation

$$y_{k+n} + a_1 y_{k+n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1} y_{k+1} + a_n y_k = 0 \quad \text{for all } k \tag{10}$$

is an n-dimensional vector space.

PROOF As was pointed out earlier, H is a subspace of $\mathbb{S}$ because H is the kernel of a linear transformation. For $\{y_k\}$ in H, let $F\{y_k\}$ be the vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$ given by $(y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_{n-1})$. It is readily verified that $F : H \to \mathbb{R}^n$ is a linear transformation. Given any vector $(y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_{n-1})$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$, Theorem 16 says that there is a unique signal $\{y_k\}$ in H such that $F\{y_k\} = (y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_{n-1})$. This means that F is a one-to-one linear transformation of H onto $\mathbb{R}^n$; that is, F is an isomorphism. Thus $\dim H = \dim \mathbb{R}^n = n$. (See Exercise 32 in Section 4.5.) ■

EXAMPLE 5 Find a basis for the set of all solutions to the difference equation

$$y_{k+3} - 2y_{k+2} - 5y_{k+1} + 6y_k = 0 \quad \text{for all } k$$

SOLUTION Our work in linear algebra really pays off now! We know from Examples 2 and 4 that 1^k, $(-2)^k$, and 3^k are linearly independent solutions. In general, it can be difficult to verify directly that a set of signals *spans* the solution space. But that is no problem here because of two key theorems—Theorem 17, which shows that the solution space is exactly three-dimensional, and the Basis Theorem in Section 4.5, which says that a linearly independent set of n vectors in an n-dimensional space is automatically a basis. So 1^k, $(-2)^k$, and 3^k form a basis for the solution space. ■

The standard way to describe the "general solution" of the difference equation (10) is to exhibit a basis for the subspace of all solutions. Such a basis is usually called a **fundamental set of solutions** of (10). In practice, if you can find n linearly independent signals that satisfy (10), they will automatically span the n-dimensional solution space, as explained in Example 5.

Nonhomogeneous Equations

The general solution of the nonhomogeneous difference equation

$$y_{k+n} + a_1 y_{k+n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1} y_{k+1} + a_n y_k = z_k \quad \text{for all } k \tag{11}$$

can be written as one particular solution of (11) plus an arbitrary linear combination of a fundamental set of solutions of the corresponding homogeneous equation (10). This fact is analogous to the result in Section 1.5 showing that the solution sets of $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ and $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ are parallel. Both results have the same explanation: The mapping $\mathbf{x} \mapsto A\mathbf{x}$ is linear, and the mapping that transforms the signal $\{y_k\}$ into the signal $\{z_k\}$ in (11) is linear. See Exercise 35.

EXAMPLE 6 Verify that the signal $y_k = k^2$ satisfies the difference equation

$$y_{k+2} - 4y_{k+1} + 3y_k = -4k \quad \text{for all } k \tag{12}$$

Then find a description of all solutions of this equation.

SOLUTION Substitute k^2 for y_k on the left side of (12):

$$\begin{aligned}(k+2)^2 &- 4(k+1)^2 + 3k^2 \\ &= (k^2 + 4k + 4) - 4(k^2 + 2k + 1) + 3k^2 \\ &= -4k\end{aligned}$$

So k^2 is indeed a solution of (12). The next step is to solve the homogeneous equation

$$y_{k+2} - 4y_{k+1} + 3y_k = 0 \tag{13}$$

The auxiliary equation is

$$r^2 - 4r + 3 = (r-1)(r-3) = 0$$

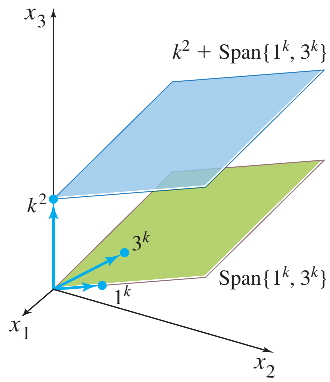


FIGURE 4
Solution sets of difference equations (12) and (13).

The roots are $r = 1, 3$. So two solutions of the homogeneous difference equation are 1^k and 3^k. They are obviously not multiples of each other, so they are linearly independent signals. By Theorem 17, the solution space is two-dimensional, so 3^k and 1^k form a basis for the set of solutions of equation (13). Translating that set by a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (12), we obtain the general solution of (12):

$$k^2 + c_1 1^k + c_2 3^k, \quad \text{or} \quad k^2 + c_1 + c_2 3^k$$

Figure 4 gives a geometric visualization of the two solution sets. Each point in the figure corresponds to one signal in $\mathbb{S}$. ■

Reduction to Systems of First-Order Equations

A modern way to study a homogeneous nth-order linear difference equation is to replace it by an equivalent system of first-order difference equations, written in the form

$$\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k \quad \text{for all } k$$

where the vectors $\mathbf{x}_k$ are in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and A is an $n \times n$ matrix.

A simple example of such a (vector-valued) difference equation was already studied in Section 1.10. Further examples will be covered in Sections 4.9 and 5.6.

EXAMPLE 7 Write the following difference equation as a first-order system:

$$y_{k+3} - 2y_{k+2} - 5y_{k+1} + 6y_k = 0 \quad \text{for all } k$$

SOLUTION For each k, set

$$\mathbf{x}_k = \begin{bmatrix} y_k \\ y_{k+1} \\ y_{k+2} \end{bmatrix}$$

The difference equation says that $y_{k+3} = -6y_k + 5y_{k+1} + 2y_{k+2}$, so

$$\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = \begin{bmatrix} y_{k+1} \\ y_{k+2} \\ y_{k+3} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & + & y_{k+1} & + 0 & \\ 0 & + 0 & & + & y_{k+2} \\ -6y_k & + & 5y_{k+1} & + & 2y_{k+2} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -6 & 5 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} y_k \\ y_{k+1} \\ y_{k+2} \end{bmatrix}$$

That is,

$$\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k \quad \text{for all } k, \quad \text{where} \quad A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -6 & 5 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$ ■

In general, the equation

$$y_{k+n} + a_1 y_{k+n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1} y_{k+1} + a_n y_k = 0 \quad \text{for all } k$$

can be rewritten as $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k$ for all k, where

$$\mathbf{x}_k = \begin{bmatrix} y_k \\ y_{k+1} \\ \vdots \\ y_{k+n-1} \end{bmatrix}, \quad A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & & 0 \\ \vdots & & & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & & 1 \\ -a_n & -a_{n-1} & -a_{n-2} & \cdots & -a_1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Further Reading

Hamming, R. W., *Digital Filters*, 3rd ed. (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1989), pp. 1–37.

Kelly, W. G., and A. C. Peterson, *Difference Equations*, 2nd ed. (San Diego: Harcourt-Academic Press, 2001).

Mickens, R. E., *Difference Equations*, 2nd ed. (New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1990), pp. 88–141.

Oppenheim, A. V., and A. S. Willsky, *Signals and Systems*, 2nd ed. (Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1997), pp. 1–14, 21–30, 38–43.

PRACTICE PROBLEM

It can be shown that the signals 2^k, $3^k \sin \frac{k\pi}{2}$, and $3^k \cos \frac{k\pi}{2}$ are solutions of

$$y_{k+3} - 2y_{k+2} + 9y_{k+1} - 18y_k = 0$$

Show that these signals form a basis for the set of all solutions of the difference equation.

4.8 EXERCISES

Verify that the signals in Exercises 1 and 2 are solutions of the accompanying difference equation.

1. $2^k, (-4)^k;\ y_{k+2} + 2y_{k+1} - 8y_k = 0$
2. $3^k, (-3)^k;\ y_{k+2} - 9y_k = 0$

Show that the signals in Exercises 3–6 form a basis for the solution set of the accompanying difference equation.

3. The signals and equation in Exercise 1
4. The signals and equation in Exercise 2
5. $(-3)^k, k(-3)^k;\ y_{k+2} + 6y_{k+1} + 9y_k = 0$
6. $5^k \cos \frac{k\pi}{2}, 5^k \sin \frac{k\pi}{2};\ y_{k+2} + 25y_k = 0$

In Exercises 7–12, assume the signals listed are solutions of the given difference equation. Determine if the signals form a basis for the solution space of the equation. Justify your answers using appropriate theorems.

7. $1^k, 2^k, (-2)^k;\ y_{k+3} - y_{k+2} - 4y_{k+1} + 4y_k = 0$
8. $2^k, 4^k, (-5)^k;\ y_{k+3} - y_{k+2} - 22y_{k+1} + 40y_k = 0$
9. $1^k, 3^k \cos \frac{k\pi}{2}, 3^k \sin \frac{k\pi}{2};\ y_{k+3} - y_{k+2} + 9y_{k+1} - 9y_k = 0$
10. $(-1)^k, k(-1)^k, 5^k;\ y_{k+3} - 3y_{k+2} - 9y_{k+1} - 5y_k = 0$
11. $(-1)^k, 3^k;\ y_{k+3} + y_{k+2} - 9y_{k+1} - 9y_k = 0$
12. $1^k, (-1)^k;\ y_{k+4} - 2y_{k+2} + y_k = 0$

In Exercises 13–16, find a basis for the solution space of the difference equation. Prove that the solutions you find span the solution set.

13. $y_{k+2} - y_{k+1} + \frac{2}{9}y_k = 0$
14. $y_{k+2} - 7y_{k+1} + 12y_k = 0$
15. $y_{k+2} - 25y_k = 0$
16. $16y_{k+2} + 8y_{k+1} - 3y_k = 0$

Exercises 17 and 18 concern a simple model of the national economy described by the difference equation

$$Y_{k+2} - a(1 + b)Y_{k+1} + abY_k = 1 \tag{14}$$

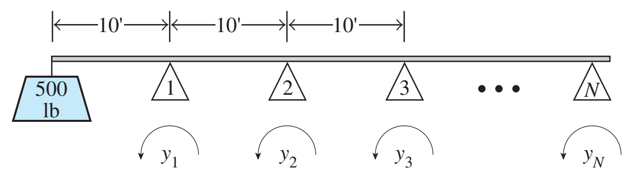
Here Y_k is the total national income during year k, a is a constant less than 1, called the *marginal propensity to consume*, and b is a positive *constant of adjustment* that describes how changes in consumer spending affect the annual rate of private investment.[1]

17. Find the general solution of equation (14) when $a = .9$ and $b = \frac{4}{9}$. What happens to Y_k as k increases? [*Hint:* First find a particular solution of the form $Y_k = T$, where T is a constant, called the equilibrium level of national income.]
18. Find the general solution of equation (14) when $a = .9$ and $b = .5$.

[1] For example, see *Discrete Dynamical Systems*, by James T. Sandefur (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1990), pp. 267–276. The original *accelerator-multiplier model* is attributed to the economist P. A. Samuelson.

A lightweight cantilevered beam is supported at N points spaced 10 ft apart, and a weight of 500 lb is placed at the end of the beam, 10 ft from the first support, as in the figure. Let y_k be the bending moment at the kth support. Then $y_1 = 5000$ ft-lb. Suppose the beam is rigidly attached at the Nth support and the bending moment there is zero. In between, the moments satisfy the *three-moment equation*

$$y_{k+2} + 4y_{k+1} + y_k = 0 \quad \text{for } k = 1, 2, \ldots, N-2 \qquad (15)$$



Bending moments on a cantilevered beam.

19. Find the general solution of difference equation (15). Justify your answer.

20. Find the particular solution of (15) that satisfies the *boundary conditions* $y_1 = 5000$ and $y_N = 0$. (The answer involves N.)

21. When a signal is produced from a sequence of measurements made on a process (a chemical reaction, a flow of heat through a tube, a moving robot arm, etc.), the signal usually contains random *noise* produced by measurement errors. A standard method of preprocessing the data to reduce the noise is to smooth or filter the data. One simple filter is a *moving average* that replaces each y_k by its average with the two adjacent values:

$$\tfrac{1}{3}y_{k+1} + \tfrac{1}{3}y_k + \tfrac{1}{3}y_{k-1} = z_k \quad \text{for } k = 1, 2, \ldots$$

Suppose a signal y_k, for $k = 0, \ldots, 14$, is

9, 5, 7, 3, 2, 4, 6, 5, 7, 6, 8, 10, 9, 5, 7

Use the filter to compute $z_1, \ldots, z_{13}$. Make a broken-line graph that superimposes the original signal and the smoothed signal.

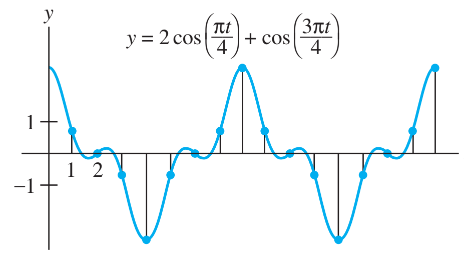
22. Let $\{y_k\}$ be the sequence produced by sampling the continuous signal $2\cos\frac{\pi t}{4} + \cos\frac{3\pi t}{4}$ at $t = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, as shown in the figure. The values of y_k, beginning with $k = 0$, are

3, .7, 0, −.7, −3, −.7, 0, .7, 3, .7, 0, …

where .7 is an abbreviation for $\sqrt{2}/2$.

a. Compute the output signal $\{z_k\}$ when $\{y_k\}$ is fed into the filter in Example 3.

b. Explain how and why the output in part (a) is related to the calculations in Example 3.



Sampled data from $2\cos\frac{\pi t}{4} + \cos\frac{3\pi t}{4}$.

Exercises 23 and 24 refer to a difference equation of the form $y_{k+1} - ay_k = b$, for suitable constants a and b.

23. A loan of \$10,000 has an interest rate of 1% per month and a monthly payment of \$450. The loan is made at month $k = 0$, and the first payment is made one month later, at $k = 1$. For $k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, let y_k be the unpaid balance of the loan just after the kth monthly payment. Thus

$$\underbrace{y_1}_{\text{New balance}} = \underbrace{10{,}000}_{\text{Balance due}} + \underbrace{(.01)10{,}000}_{\text{Interest added}} - \underbrace{450}_{\text{Payment}}$$

a. Write a difference equation satisfied by $\{y_k\}$.

b. **[M]** Create a table showing k and the balance y_k at month k. List the program or the keystrokes you used to create the table.

c. **[M]** What will k be when the last payment is made? How much will the last payment be? How much money did the borrower pay in total?

24. At time $k = 0$, an initial investment of \$1000 is made into a savings account that pays 6% interest per year compounded monthly. (The interest rate per month is .005.) Each month after the initial investment, an additional \$200 is added to the account. For $k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, let y_k be the amount in the account at time k, just after a deposit has been made.

a. Write a difference equation satisfied by $\{y_k\}$.

b. **[M]** Create a table showing k and the total amount in the savings account at month k, for $k = 0$ through 60. List your program or the keystrokes you used to create the table.

c. **[M]** How much will be in the account after two years (that is, 24 months), four years, and five years? How much of the five-year total is interest?

In Exercises 25–28, show that the given signal is a solution of the difference equation. Then find the general solution of that difference equation.

25. $y_k = k^2$; $y_{k+2} + 3y_{k+1} - 4y_k = 7 + 10k$

26. $y_k = 1 + k$; $y_{k+2} - 8y_{k+1} + 15y_k = 2 + 8k$

27. $y_k = 2 - 2k$; $y_{k+2} - \frac{9}{2}y_{k+1} + 2y_k = 2 + 3k$

28. $y_k = 2k - 4$; $y_{k+2} + \frac{3}{2}y_{k+1} - y_k = 1 + 3k$

Write the difference equations in Exercises 29 and 30 as first-order systems, $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k$, for all k.

29. $y_{k+4} - 6y_{k+3} + 8y_{k+2} + 6y_{k+1} - 9y_k = 0$

30. $y_{k+3} - \frac{3}{4}y_{k+2} + \frac{1}{16}y_k = 0$

31. Is the following difference equation of order 3? Explain.

$$y_{k+3} + 5y_{k+2} + 6y_{k+1} = 0$$

32. What is the order of the following difference equation? Explain your answer.

$$y_{k+3} + a_1y_{k+2} + a_2y_{k+1} + a_3y_k = 0$$

33. Let $y_k = k^2$ and $z_k = 2k|k|$. Are the signals $\{y_k\}$ and $\{z_k\}$ linearly independent? Evaluate the associated Casorati matrix $C(k)$ for $k = 0, k = -1$, and $k = -2$, and discuss your results.

34. Let f, g, and h be linearly independent functions defined for all real numbers, and construct three signals by sampling the values of the functions at the integers:

$$u_k = f(k), \qquad v_k = g(k), \qquad w_k = h(k)$$

Must the signals be linearly independent in $\mathbb{S}$? Discuss.

35. Let a and b be nonzero numbers. Show that the mapping T defined by $T\{y_k\} = \{w_k\}$, where

$$w_k = y_{k+2} + ay_{k+1} + by_k$$

is a linear transformation from $\mathbb{S}$ into $\mathbb{S}$.

36. Let V be a vector space, and let $T : V \to V$ be a linear transformation. Given $\mathbf{z}$ in V, suppose $\mathbf{x}_p$ in V satisfies $T(\mathbf{x}_p) = \mathbf{z}$, and let $\mathbf{u}$ be any vector in the kernel of T. Show that $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{x}_p$ satisfies the nonhomogeneous equation $T(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{z}$.

37. Let $\mathbb{S}_0$ be the vector space of all sequences of the form $(y_0, y_1, y_2, \ldots)$, and define linear transformations T and D from $\mathbb{S}_0$ into $\mathbb{S}_0$ by

$$T(y_0, y_1, y_2, \ldots) = (y_1, y_2, y_3, \ldots)$$
$$D(y_0, y_1, y_2, \ldots) = (0, y_0, y_1, y_2, \ldots)$$

Show that $TD = I$ (the identity transformation on $\mathbb{S}_0$) and yet $DT \neq I$.

SOLUTION TO PRACTICE PROBLEM

Examine the Casorati matrix:

$$C(k) = \begin{bmatrix} 2^k & 3^k \sin\frac{k\pi}{2} & 3^k \cos\frac{k\pi}{2} \\ 2^{k+1} & 3^{k+1}\sin\frac{(k+1)\pi}{2} & 3^{k+1}\cos\frac{(k+1)\pi}{2} \\ 2^{k+2} & 3^{k+2}\sin\frac{(k+2)\pi}{2} & 3^{k+2}\cos\frac{(k+2)\pi}{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

Set $k = 0$ and row reduce the matrix to verify that it has three pivot positions and hence is invertible:

$$C(0) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 \\ 4 & 0 & -9 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 3 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & -13 \end{bmatrix}$$

The Casorati matrix is invertible at $k = 0$, so the signals are linearly independent. Since there are three signals, and the solution space H of the difference equation has dimension 3 (Theorem 17), the signals form a basis for H, by the Basis Theorem.

4.9 APPLICATIONS TO MARKOV CHAINS

The Markov chains described in this section are used as mathematical models of a wide variety of situations in biology, business, chemistry, engineering, physics, and elsewhere. In each case, the model is used to describe an experiment or measurement that is performed many times in the same way, where the outcome of each trial of the experiment will be one of several specified possible outcomes, and where the outcome of one trial depends only on the immediately preceding trial.

For example, if the population of a city and its suburbs were measured each year, then a vector such as

$$\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} .60 \\ .40 \end{bmatrix} \tag{1}$$

could indicate that 60% of the population lives in the city and 40% in the suburbs. The decimals in $\mathbf{x}_0$ add up to 1 because they account for the entire population of the region. Percentages are more convenient for our purposes here than population totals.

A vector with nonnegative entries that add up to 1 is called a **probability vector**. A **stochastic matrix** is a square matrix whose columns are probability vectors. A **Markov chain** is a sequence of probability vectors $\mathbf{x}_0, \mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \ldots$, together with a stochastic matrix P, such that

$$\mathbf{x}_1 = P\mathbf{x}_0, \quad \mathbf{x}_2 = P\mathbf{x}_1, \quad \mathbf{x}_3 = P\mathbf{x}_2, \quad \ldots$$

Thus the Markov chain is described by the first-order difference equation

$$\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = P\mathbf{x}_k \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$$

When a Markov chain of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ describes a system or a sequence of experiments, the entries in $\mathbf{x}_k$ list, respectively, the probabilities that the system is in each of n possible states, or the probabilities that the outcome of the experiment is one of n possible outcomes. For this reason, $\mathbf{x}_k$ is often called a **state vector**.

EXAMPLE 1 Section 1.10 examined a model for population movement between a city and its suburbs. See Figure 1. The annual migration between these two parts of the metropolitan region was governed by the *migration matrix* M:

From:

City Suburbs To:

$$M = \begin{bmatrix} .95 & .03 \\ .05 & .97 \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} \text{City} \\ \text{Suburbs} \end{matrix}$$

That is, each year 5% of the city population moves to the suburbs, and 3% of the suburban population moves to the city. The columns of M are probability vectors, so M is a stochastic matrix. Suppose the 2014 population of the region is 600,000 in the city and 400,000 in the suburbs. Then the initial distribution of the population in the region is given by $\mathbf{x}_0$ in (1) above. What is the distribution of the population in 2015? In 2016?

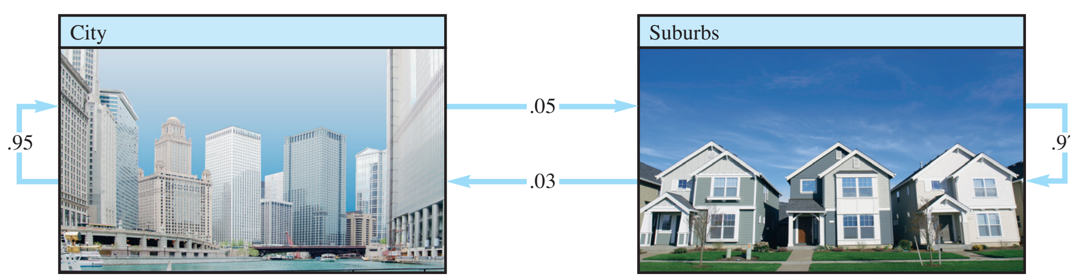


FIGURE 1 Annual percentage migration between city and suburbs.

SOLUTION In Example 3 of Section 1.10, we saw that after one year, the population vector $\begin{bmatrix} 600{,}000 \\ 400{,}000 \end{bmatrix}$ changed to

$$\begin{bmatrix} .95 & .03 \\ .05 & .97 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 600{,}000 \\ 400{,}000 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 582{,}000 \\ 418{,}000 \end{bmatrix}$$

If we divide both sides of this equation by the total population of 1 million, and use the fact that $kM\mathbf{x} = M(k\mathbf{x})$, we find that

$$\begin{bmatrix} .95 & .03 \\ .05 & .97 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} .600 \\ .400 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .582 \\ .418 \end{bmatrix}$$

The vector $\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} .582 \\ .418 \end{bmatrix}$ gives the population distribution in 2015. That is, 58.2% of the region lived in the city and 41.8% lived in the suburbs. Similarly, the population distribution in 2016 is described by a vector $\mathbf{x}_2$, where

$$\mathbf{x}_2 = M\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} .95 & .03 \\ .05 & .97 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} .582 \\ .418 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .565 \\ .435 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \blacksquare$$

EXAMPLE 2 Suppose the voting results of a congressional election at a certain voting precinct are represented by a vector $\mathbf{x}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$:

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} \text{\% voting Democratic (D)} \\ \text{\% voting Republican (R)} \\ \text{\% voting Libertarian (L)} \end{bmatrix}$$

Suppose we record the outcome of the congressional election every two years by a vector of this type and the outcome of one election depends only on the results of the preceding election. Then the sequence of vectors that describe the votes every two years may be a Markov chain. As an example of a stochastic matrix P for this chain, we take

$$\begin{array}{cc} & \text{From:} \\ & \begin{array}{ccc} \text{D} & \text{R} & \text{L} \end{array} \\ P = & \begin{bmatrix} .70 & .10 & .30 \\ .20 & .80 & .30 \\ .10 & .10 & .40 \end{bmatrix} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{To:} \\ \text{D} \\ \text{R} \\ \text{L} \end{array}$$

The entries in the first column, labeled D, describe what the persons voting Democratic in one election will do in the next election. Here we have supposed that 70% will vote D again in the next election, 20% will vote R, and 10% will vote L. Similar interpretations hold for the other columns of P. A diagram for this matrix is shown in Figure 2.

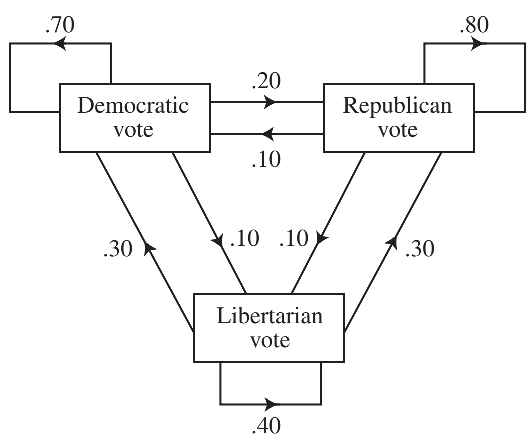


FIGURE 2 Voting changes from one election to the next.

If the "transition" percentages remain constant over many years from one election to the next, then the sequence of vectors that give the voting outcomes forms a Markov chain. Suppose the outcome of one election is given by

$$\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} .55 \\ .40 \\ .05 \end{bmatrix}$$

Determine the likely outcome of the next election and the likely outcome of the election after that.

SOLUTION The outcome of the next election is described by the state vector $\mathbf{x}_1$ and that of the election after that by $\mathbf{x}_2$, where

$$\mathbf{x}_1 = P\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} .70 & .10 & .30 \\ .20 & .80 & .30 \\ .10 & .10 & .40 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} .55 \\ .40 \\ .05 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .440 \\ .445 \\ .115 \end{bmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} \text{44\% will vote D.} \\ \text{44.5\% will vote R.} \\ \text{11.5\% will vote L.} \end{matrix}$$

$$\mathbf{x}_2 = P\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} .70 & .10 & .30 \\ .20 & .80 & .30 \\ .10 & .10 & .40 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} .440 \\ .445 \\ .115 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .3870 \\ .4785 \\ .1345 \end{bmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} \text{38.7\% will vote D.} \\ \text{47.8\% will vote R.} \\ \text{13.5\% will vote L.} \end{matrix}$$

To understand why $\mathbf{x}_1$ does indeed give the outcome of the next election, suppose 1000 persons voted in the "first" election, with 550 voting D, 400 voting R, and 50 voting L. (See the percentages in $\mathbf{x}_0$.) In the next election, 70% of the 550 will vote D again, 10% of the 400 will switch from R to D, and 30% of the 50 will switch from L to D. Thus the total D vote will be

$$.70(550) + .10(400) + .30(50) = 385 + 40 + 15 = 440 \tag{2}$$

Thus 44% of the vote next time will be for the D candidate. The calculation in (2) is essentially the same as that used to compute the first entry in $\mathbf{x}_1$. Analogous calculations could be made for the other entries in $\mathbf{x}_1$, for the entries in $\mathbf{x}_2$, and so on. ■

Predicting the Distant Future

The most interesting aspect of Markov chains is the study of a chain's long-term behavior. For instance, what can be said in Example 2 about the voting after many elections have passed (assuming that the given stochastic matrix continues to describe the transition percentages from one election to the next)? Or, what happens to the population distribution in Example 1 "in the long run"? Before answering these questions, we turn to a numerical example.

EXAMPLE 3 Let $P = \begin{bmatrix} .5 & .2 & .3 \\ .3 & .8 & .3 \\ .2 & 0 & .4 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$. Consider a system whose state is described by the Markov chain $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = P\mathbf{x}_k$, for $k = 0, 1, \ldots$ What happens to the system as time passes? Compute the state vectors $\mathbf{x}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{x}_{15}$ to find out.

SOLUTION

$$\mathbf{x}_1 = P\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} .5 & .2 & .3 \\ .3 & .8 & .3 \\ .2 & 0 & .4 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .5 \\ .3 \\ .2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{x}_2 = P\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} .5 & .2 & .3 \\ .3 & .8 & .3 \\ .2 & 0 & .4 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} .5 \\ .3 \\ .2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .37 \\ .45 \\ .18 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{x}_3 = P\mathbf{x}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} .5 & .2 & .3 \\ .3 & .8 & .3 \\ .2 & 0 & .4 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} .37 \\ .45 \\ .18 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .329 \\ .525 \\ .146 \end{bmatrix}$$

The results of further calculations are shown below, with entries rounded to four or five significant figures.

$$\mathbf{x}_4 = \begin{bmatrix} .3133 \\ .5625 \\ .1242 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}_5 = \begin{bmatrix} .3064 \\ .5813 \\ .1123 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}_6 = \begin{bmatrix} .3032 \\ .5906 \\ .1062 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}_7 = \begin{bmatrix} .3016 \\ .5953 \\ .1031 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{x}_8 = \begin{bmatrix} .3008 \\ .5977 \\ .1016 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}_9 = \begin{bmatrix} .3004 \\ .5988 \\ .1008 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}_{10} = \begin{bmatrix} .3002 \\ .5994 \\ .1004 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}_{11} = \begin{bmatrix} .3001 \\ .5997 \\ .1002 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{x}_{12} = \begin{bmatrix} .30005 \\ .59985 \\ .10010 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}_{13} = \begin{bmatrix} .30002 \\ .59993 \\ .10005 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}_{14} = \begin{bmatrix} .30001 \\ .59996 \\ .10002 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}_{15} = \begin{bmatrix} .30001 \\ .59998 \\ .10001 \end{bmatrix}$$

These vectors seem to be approaching $\mathbf{q} = \begin{bmatrix} .3 \\ .6 \\ .1 \end{bmatrix}$. The probabilities are hardly changing from one value of k to the next. Observe that the following calculation is exact (with no rounding error):

$$P\mathbf{q} = \begin{bmatrix} .5 & .2 & .3 \\ .3 & .8 & .3 \\ .2 & 0 & .4 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} .3 \\ .6 \\ .1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .15 + .12 + .03 \\ .09 + .48 + .03 \\ .06 + 0 + .04 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .30 \\ .60 \\ .10 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{q}$$

When the system is in state $\mathbf{q}$, there is no change in the system from one measurement to the next. ■

Steady-State Vectors

If P is a stochastic matrix, then a **steady-state vector** (or **equilibrium vector**) for P is a probability vector $\mathbf{q}$ such that

$$P\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{q}$$

It can be shown that every stochastic matrix has a steady-state vector. In Example 3, $\mathbf{q}$ is a steady-state vector for P.

EXAMPLE 4 The probability vector $\mathbf{q} = \begin{bmatrix} .375 \\ .625 \end{bmatrix}$ is a steady-state vector for the population migration matrix M in Example 1, because

$$M\mathbf{q} = \begin{bmatrix} .95 & .03 \\ .05 & .97 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} .375 \\ .625 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .35625 + .01875 \\ .01875 + .60625 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .375 \\ .625 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{q}$$ ■

If the total population of the metropolitan region in Example 1 is 1 million, then **q** from Example 4 would correspond to having 375,000 persons in the city and 625,000 in the suburbs. At the end of one year, the migration *out of* the city would be $(.05)(375{,}000) = 18{,}750$ persons, and the migration *into* the city from the suburbs would be $(.03)(625{,}000) = 18{,}750$ persons. As a result, the population in the city would remain the same. Similarly, the suburban population would be stable.

The next example shows how to *find* a steady-state vector.

EXAMPLE 5 Let $P = \begin{bmatrix} .6 & .3 \\ .4 & .7 \end{bmatrix}$. Find a steady-state vector for P.

SOLUTION First, solve the equation $P\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}$.

$$P\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$$

$$P\mathbf{x} - I\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0} \qquad \text{Recall from Section 1.4 that } I\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}.$$

$$(P - I)\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$$

For P as above,

$$P - I = \begin{bmatrix} .6 & .3 \\ .4 & .7 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -.4 & .3 \\ .4 & -.3 \end{bmatrix}$$

To find all solutions of $(P - I)\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, row reduce the augmented matrix:

$$\begin{bmatrix} -.4 & .3 & 0 \\ .4 & -.3 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} -.4 & .3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3/4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Then $x_1 = \frac{3}{4}x_2$ and x_2 is free. The general solution is $x_2 \begin{bmatrix} 3/4 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

Next, choose a simple basis for the solution space. One obvious choice is $\begin{bmatrix} 3/4 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ but a better choice with no fractions is $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$ (corresponding to $x_2 = 4$).

Finally, find a probability vector in the set of all solutions of $P\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}$. This process is easy, since every solution is a multiple of the solution **w** above. Divide **w** by the sum of its entries and obtain

$$\mathbf{q} = \begin{bmatrix} 3/7 \\ 4/7 \end{bmatrix}$$

As a check, compute

$$P\mathbf{q} = \begin{bmatrix} 6/10 & 3/10 \\ 4/10 & 7/10 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 3/7 \\ 4/7 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 18/70 + 12/70 \\ 12/70 + 28/70 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 30/70 \\ 40/70 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{q}$$ ■

The next theorem shows that what happened in Example 3 is typical of many stochastic matrices. We say that a stochastic matrix is **regular** if some matrix power P^k contains only strictly positive entries. For P in Example 3,

$$P^2 = \begin{bmatrix} .37 & .26 & .33 \\ .45 & .70 & .45 \\ .18 & .04 & .22 \end{bmatrix}$$

Since every entry in P^2 is strictly positive, P is a regular stochastic matrix.

Also, we say that a sequence of vectors $\{\mathbf{x}_k : k = 1, 2, \ldots\}$ **converges** to a vector **q** as $k \to \infty$ if the entries in $\mathbf{x}_k$ can be made as close as desired to the corresponding entries in **q** by taking k sufficiently large.

THEOREM 18

If P is an $n \times n$ regular stochastic matrix, then P has a unique steady-state vector $\mathbf{q}$. Further, if $\mathbf{x}_0$ is any initial state and $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = P\mathbf{x}_k$ for $k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, then the Markov chain $\{\mathbf{x}_k\}$ converges to $\mathbf{q}$ as $k \to \infty$.

This theorem is proved in standard texts on Markov chains. The amazing part of the theorem is that the initial state has no effect on the long-term behavior of the Markov chain. You will see later (in Section 5.2) why this is true for several stochastic matrices studied here.

EXAMPLE 6 In Example 2, what percentage of the voters are likely to vote for the Republican candidate in some election many years from now, assuming that the election outcomes form a Markov chain?

SOLUTION For computations by hand, the *wrong* approach is to pick some initial vector $\mathbf{x}_0$ and compute $\mathbf{x}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{x}_k$ for some large value of k. You have no way of knowing how many vectors to compute, and you cannot be sure of the limiting values of the entries in $\mathbf{x}_k$.

The correct approach is to compute the steady-state vector and then appeal to Theorem 18. Given P as in Example 2, form $P - I$ by subtracting 1 from each diagonal entry in P. Then row reduce the augmented matrix:

$$[\,(P - I) \quad \mathbf{0}\,] = \begin{bmatrix} -.3 & .1 & .3 & 0 \\ .2 & -.2 & .3 & 0 \\ .1 & .1 & -.6 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Recall from earlier work with decimals that the arithmetic is simplified by multiplying each row by 10.[1]

$$\begin{bmatrix} -3 & 1 & 3 & 0 \\ 2 & -2 & 3 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & -6 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -9/4 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -15/4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The general solution of $(P - I)\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is $x_1 = \frac{9}{4}x_3$, $x_2 = \frac{15}{4}x_3$, and x_3 is free. Choosing $x_3 = 4$, we obtain a basis for the solution space whose entries are integers, and from this we easily find the steady-state vector whose entries sum to 1:

$$\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 9 \\ 15 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{q} = \begin{bmatrix} 9/28 \\ 15/28 \\ 4/28 \end{bmatrix} \approx \begin{bmatrix} .32 \\ .54 \\ .14 \end{bmatrix}$$

The entries in $\mathbf{q}$ describe the distribution of votes at an election to be held many years from now (assuming the stochastic matrix continues to describe the changes from one election to the next). Thus, eventually, about 54% of the vote will be for the Republican candidate. ■

[1] *Warning:* Don't multiply only P by 10. Instead, multiply the augmented matrix for equation $(P - I)\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ by 10.

NUMERICAL NOTE

You may have noticed that if $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = P\mathbf{x}_k$ for $k = 0, 1, \ldots,$ then

$$\mathbf{x}_2 = P\mathbf{x}_1 = P(P\mathbf{x}_0) = P^2\mathbf{x}_0,$$

and, in general,

$$\mathbf{x}_k = P^k\mathbf{x}_0 \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, \ldots$$

To compute a specific vector such as $\mathbf{x}_3$, fewer arithmetic operations are needed to compute $\mathbf{x}_1$, $\mathbf{x}_2$, and $\mathbf{x}_3$, rather than P^3 and $P^3\mathbf{x}_0$. However, if P is small—say, 30×30—the machine computation time is insignificant for both methods, and a command to compute $P^3\mathbf{x}_0$ might be preferred because it requires fewer human keystrokes.

PRACTICE PROBLEMS

1. Suppose the residents of a metropolitan region move according to the probabilities in the migration matrix M in Example 1 and a resident is chosen "at random." Then a state vector for a certain year may be interpreted as giving the probabilities that the person is a city resident or a suburban resident at that time.
   a. Suppose the person chosen is a city resident now, so that $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$. What is the likelihood that the person will live in the suburbs next year?
   b. What is the likelihood that the person will be living in the suburbs in two years?
2. Let $P = \begin{bmatrix} .6 & .2 \\ .4 & .8 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{q} = \begin{bmatrix} .3 \\ .7 \end{bmatrix}$. Is $\mathbf{q}$ a steady-state vector for P?
3. What percentage of the population in Example 1 will live in the suburbs after many years?

4.9 EXERCISES

1. A small remote village receives radio broadcasts from two radio stations, a news station and a music station. Of the listeners who are tuned to the news station, 70% will remain listening to the news after the station break that occurs each half hour, while 30% will switch to the music station at the station break. Of the listeners who are tuned to the music station, 60% will switch to the news station at the station break, while 40% will remain listening to the music. Suppose everyone is listening to the news at 8:15 A.M.
   a. Give the stochastic matrix that describes how the radio listeners tend to change stations at each station break. Label the rows and columns.
   b. Give the initial state vector.
   c. What percentage of the listeners will be listening to the music station at 9:25 A.M. (after the station breaks at 8:30 and 9:00 A.M.)?
2. A laboratory animal may eat any one of three foods each day. Laboratory records show that if the animal chooses one food on one trial, it will choose the same food on the next trial with a probability of 50%, and it will choose the other foods on the next trial with equal probabilities of 25%.
   a. What is the stochastic matrix for this situation?
   b. If the animal chooses food #1 on an initial trial, what is the probability that it will choose food #2 on the second trial after the initial trial?

3. On any given day, a student is either healthy or ill. Of the students who are healthy today, 95% will be healthy

tomorrow. Of the students who are ill today, 55% will still be ill tomorrow.

a. What is the stochastic matrix for this situation?

b. Suppose 20% of the students are ill on Monday. What fraction or percentage of the students are likely to be ill on Tuesday? On Wednesday?

c. If a student is well today, what is the probability that he or she will be well two days from now?

4. The weather in Columbus is either good, indifferent, or bad on any given day. If the weather is good today, there is a 60% chance the weather will be good tomorrow, a 30% chance the weather will be indifferent, and a 10% chance the weather will be bad. If the weather is indifferent today, it will be good tomorrow with probability .40 and indifferent with probability .30. Finally, if the weather is bad today, it will be good tomorrow with probability .40 and indifferent with probability .50.

a. What is the stochastic matrix for this situation?

b. Suppose there is a 50% chance of good weather today and a 50% chance of indifferent weather. What are the chances of bad weather tomorrow?

c. Suppose the predicted weather for Monday is 40% indifferent weather and 60% bad weather. What are the chances for good weather on Wednesday?

In Exercises 5–8, find the steady-state vector.

5. $\begin{bmatrix} .1 & .6 \\ .9 & .4 \end{bmatrix}$

6. $\begin{bmatrix} .8 & .5 \\ .2 & .5 \end{bmatrix}$

7. $\begin{bmatrix} .7 & .1 & .1 \\ .2 & .8 & .2 \\ .1 & .1 & .7 \end{bmatrix}$

8. $\begin{bmatrix} .7 & .2 & .2 \\ 0 & .2 & .4 \\ .3 & .6 & .4 \end{bmatrix}$

9. Determine if $P = \begin{bmatrix} .2 & 1 \\ .8 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ is a regular stochastic matrix.

10. Determine if $P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & .2 \\ 0 & .8 \end{bmatrix}$ is a regular stochastic matrix.

11. a. Find the steady-state vector for the Markov chain in Exercise 1.

b. At some time late in the day, what fraction of the listeners will be listening to the news?

12. Refer to Exercise 2. Which food will the animal prefer after many trials?

13. a. Find the steady-state vector for the Markov chain in Exercise 3.

b. What is the probability that after many days a specific student is ill? Does it matter if that person is ill today?

14. Refer to Exercise 4. In the long run, how likely is it for the weather in Columbus to be good on a given day?

15. [**M**] The Demographic Research Unit of the California State Department of Finance supplied data for the following migration matrix, which describes the movement of the United States population during 2012. In 2012, about 12.5% of the total population lived in California. What percentage of the total population would eventually live in California if the listed migration probabilities were to remain constant over many years?

From: CA	From: Rest of U.S.	To:
.9871	.0027	California
.0129	.9973	Rest of U.S.

16. [**M**] In Detroit, Hertz Rent A Car has a fleet of about 2000 cars. The pattern of rental and return locations is given by the fractions in the table below. On a typical day, about how many cars will be rented or ready to rent from the downtown location?

Cars Rented from: City Airport	Down-town	Metro Airport	Returned to:
.90	.01	.09	City Airport
.01	.90	.01	Downtown
.09	.09	.90	Metro Airport

17. Let P be an $n \times n$ stochastic matrix. The following argument shows that the equation $P\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}$ has a nontrivial solution. (In fact, a steady-state solution exists with nonnegative entries. A proof is given in some advanced texts.) Justify each assertion below. (Mention a theorem when appropriate.)

a. If all the other rows of $P - I$ are added to the bottom row, the result is a row of zeros.

b. The rows of $P - I$ are linearly dependent.

c. The dimension of the row space of $P - I$ is less than n.

d. $P - I$ has a nontrivial null space.

18. Show that every 2×2 stochastic matrix has at least one steady-state vector. Any such matrix can be written in the form $P = \begin{bmatrix} 1-\alpha & \beta \\ \alpha & 1-\beta \end{bmatrix}$, where α and β are constants between 0 and 1. (There are two linearly independent steady-state vectors if $\alpha = \beta = 0$. Otherwise, there is only one.)

19. Let S be the $1 \times n$ row matrix with a 1 in each column,

$S = [\,1 \quad 1 \quad \cdots \quad 1\,]$

a. Explain why a vector $\mathbf{x}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ is a probability vector if and only if its entries are nonnegative and $S\mathbf{x} = 1$. (A 1×1 matrix such as the product $S\mathbf{x}$ is usually written without the matrix bracket symbols.)

b. Let P be an $n \times n$ stochastic matrix. Explain why $SP = S$.

c. Let P be an $n \times n$ stochastic matrix, and let $\mathbf{x}$ be a probability vector. Show that $P\mathbf{x}$ is also a probability vector.

20. Use Exercise 19 to show that if P is an $n \times n$ stochastic matrix, then so is P^2.

21. [**M**] Examine powers of a regular stochastic matrix.

a. Compute P^k for $k = 2, 3, 4, 5$, when

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} .3355 & .3682 & .3067 & .0389 \\ .2663 & .2723 & .3277 & .5451 \\ .1935 & .1502 & .1589 & .2395 \\ .2047 & .2093 & .2067 & .1765 \end{bmatrix}$$

Display calculations to four decimal places. What happens to the columns of P^k as k increases? Compute the steady-state vector for P.

b. Compute Q^k for $k = 10, 20, \ldots, 80$, when

$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} .97 & .05 & .10 \\ 0 & .90 & .05 \\ .03 & .05 & .85 \end{bmatrix}$$

(Stability for Q^k to four decimal places may require $k = 116$ or more.) Compute the steady-state vector for Q. Conjecture what might be true for any regular stochastic matrix.

c. Use Theorem 18 to explain what you found in parts (a) and (b).

22. [**M**] Compare two methods for finding the steady-state vector $\mathbf{q}$ of a regular stochastic matrix P: (1) computing $\mathbf{q}$ as in Example 5, or (2) computing P^k for some large value of k and using one of the columns of P^k as an approximation for $\mathbf{q}$. [The *Study Guide* describes a program *nulbasis* that almost automates method (1).]

Experiment with the largest random stochastic matrices your matrix program will allow, and use $k = 100$ or some other large value. For each method, describe the time *you* need to enter the keystrokes and run your program. (Some versions of MATLAB have commands `flops` and `tic ... toc` that record the number of floating point operations and the total elapsed time MATLAB uses.) Contrast the advantages of each method, and state which you prefer.

SOLUTIONS TO PRACTICE PROBLEMS

1. a. Since 5% of the city residents will move to the suburbs within one year, there is a 5% chance of choosing such a person. Without further knowledge about the person, we say that there is a 5% chance the person will move to the suburbs. This fact is contained in the second entry of the state vector $\mathbf{x}_1$, where

$$\mathbf{x}_1 = M\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} .95 & .03 \\ .05 & .97 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .95 \\ .05 \end{bmatrix}$$

b. The likelihood that the person will be living in the suburbs after two years is 9.6%, because

$$\mathbf{x}_2 = M\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} .95 & .03 \\ .05 & .97 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} .95 \\ .05 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .904 \\ .096 \end{bmatrix}$$

2. The steady-state vector satisfies $P\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}$. Since

$$P\mathbf{q} = \begin{bmatrix} .6 & .2 \\ .4 & .8 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} .3 \\ .7 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .32 \\ .68 \end{bmatrix} \neq \mathbf{q}$$

we conclude that $\mathbf{q}$ is *not* the steady-state vector for P.

3. M in Example 1 is a regular stochastic matrix because its entries are all strictly positive. So we may use Theorem 18. We already know the steady-state vector from Example 4. Thus the population distribution vectors $\mathbf{x}_k$ converge to

$$\mathbf{q} = \begin{bmatrix} .375 \\ .625 \end{bmatrix}$$

WEB

Eventually 62.5% of the population will live in the suburbs.

CHAPTER 4 SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

1. Mark each statement True or False. Justify each answer. (If true, cite appropriate facts or theorems. If false, explain why or give a counterexample that shows why the statement is not true in every case.) In parts (a)–(f), $\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_p$ are vectors in a nonzero finite-dimensional vector space V, and $S = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$.

a. The set of all linear combinations of $\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_p$ is a vector space.

b. If $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{p-1}\}$ spans V, then S spans V.

c. If $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{p-1}\}$ is linearly independent, then so is S.

d. If S is linearly independent, then S is a basis for V.

e. If Span $S = V$, then some subset of S is a basis for V.

f. If $\dim V = p$ and Span $S = V$, then S cannot be linearly dependent.

g. A plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is a two-dimensional subspace.

h. The nonpivot columns of a matrix are always linearly dependent.

i. Row operations on a matrix A can change the linear dependence relations among the rows of A.

j. Row operations on a matrix can change the null space.

k. The rank of a matrix equals the number of nonzero rows.

l. If an $m \times n$ matrix A is row equivalent to an echelon matrix U and if U has k nonzero rows, then the dimension of the solution space of $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is $m - k$.

m. If B is obtained from a matrix A by several elementary row operations, then rank B = rank A.

n. The nonzero rows of a matrix A form a basis for Row A.

o. If matrices A and B have the same reduced echelon form, then Row A = Row B.

p. If H is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$, then there is a 3×3 matrix A such that H = Col A.

q. If A is $m \times n$ and rank $A = m$, then the linear transformation $\mathbf{x} \mapsto A\mathbf{x}$ is one-to-one.

r. If A is $m \times n$ and the linear transformation $\mathbf{x} \mapsto A\mathbf{x}$ is onto, then rank $A = m$.

s. A change-of-coordinates matrix is always invertible.

t. If $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{b}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{b}_n\}$ and $\mathcal{C} = \{\mathbf{c}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{c}_n\}$ are bases for a vector space V, then the jth column of the change-of-coordinates matrix $\underset{\mathcal{C}\leftarrow\mathcal{B}}{P}$ is the coordinate vector $[\mathbf{c}_j]_{\mathcal{B}}$.

2. Find a basis for the set of all vectors of the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} a - 2b + 5c \\ 2a + 5b - 8c \\ -a - 4b + 7c \\ 3a + b + c \end{bmatrix}. \quad \text{(Be careful.)}$$

3. Let $\mathbf{u}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 4 \\ -6 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{u}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ b_3 \end{bmatrix}$, and $W = \text{Span}\{\mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_2\}$. Find an *implicit* description of W; that is, find a set of one or more homogeneous equations that characterize the points of W. [*Hint:* When is $\mathbf{b}$ in W?]

4. Explain what is wrong with the following discussion: Let $\mathbf{f}(t) = 3 + t$ and $\mathbf{g}(t) = 3t + t^2$, and note that $\mathbf{g}(t) = t\mathbf{f}(t)$. Then $\{\mathbf{f}, \mathbf{g}\}$ is linearly dependent because $\mathbf{g}$ is a multiple of $\mathbf{f}$.

5. Consider the polynomials $\mathbf{p}_1(t) = 1 + t$, $\mathbf{p}_2(t) = 1 - t$, $\mathbf{p}_3(t) = 4$, $\mathbf{p}_4(t) = t + t^2$, and $\mathbf{p}_5(t) = 1 + 2t + t^2$, and let H be the subspace of $\mathbb{P}_5$ spanned by the set $S = \{\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_2, \mathbf{p}_3, \mathbf{p}_4, \mathbf{p}_5\}$. Use the method described in the proof of the Spanning Set Theorem (Section 4.3) to produce a basis for H. (Explain how to select appropriate members of S.)

6. Suppose $\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_2, \mathbf{p}_3$, and $\mathbf{p}_4$ are specific polynomials that span a two-dimensional subspace H of $\mathbb{P}_5$. Describe how one can find a basis for H by examining the four polynomials and making almost no computations.

7. What would you have to know about the solution set of a homogeneous system of 18 linear equations in 20 variables in order to know that every associated nonhomogeneous equation has a solution? Discuss.

8. Let H be an n-dimensional subspace of an n-dimensional vector space V. Explain why $H = V$.

9. Let $T : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ be a linear transformation.

a. What is the dimension of the range of T if T is a one-to-one mapping? Explain.

b. What is the dimension of the kernel of T (see Section 4.2) if T maps $\mathbb{R}^n$ onto $\mathbb{R}^m$? Explain.

10. Let S be a maximal linearly independent subset of a vector space V. That is, S has the property that if a vector not in S is adjoined to S, then the new set will no longer be linearly independent. Prove that S must be a basis for V. [*Hint:* What if S were linearly independent but not a basis of V?]

11. Let S be a finite minimal spanning set of a vector space V. That is, S has the property that if a vector is removed from S, then the new set will no longer span V. Prove that S must be a basis for V.

Exercises 12–17 develop properties of rank that are sometimes needed in applications. Assume the matrix A is $m \times n$.

12. Show from parts (a) and (b) that rank AB cannot exceed the rank of A or the rank of B. (In general, the rank of a product of matrices cannot exceed the rank of any factor in the product.)

a. Show that if B is $n \times p$, then rank $AB \leq$ rank A. [*Hint:* Explain why every vector in the column space of AB is in the column space of A.]

b. Show that if B is $n \times p$, then rank $AB \leq$ rank B. [*Hint:* Use part (a) to study rank$(AB)^T$.]

13. Show that if P is an invertible $m \times m$ matrix, then rank PA = rank A. [*Hint:* Apply Exercise 12 to PA and $P^{-1}(PA)$.]

14. Show that if Q is invertible, then rank AQ = rank A. [*Hint:* Use Exercise 13 to study rank$(AQ)^T$.]

15. Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix, and let B be an $n \times p$ matrix such that $AB = 0$. Show that rank A + rank $B \leq n$. [*Hint:* One of the four subspaces Nul A, Col A, Nul B, and Col B is contained in one of the other three subspaces.]

16. If A is an $m \times n$ matrix of rank r, then a *rank factorization* of A is an equation of the form $A = CR$, where C is an $m \times r$ matrix of rank r and R is an $r \times n$ matrix of rank r. Such a factorization always exists (Exercise 38 in Section

4.6). Given any two $m \times n$ matrices A and B, use rank factorizations of A and B to prove that

$$\operatorname{rank}(A + B) \leq \operatorname{rank} A + \operatorname{rank} B$$

[*Hint:* Write $A + B$ as the product of two partitioned matrices.]

17. A **submatrix** of a matrix A is any matrix that results from deleting some (or no) rows and/or columns of A. It can be shown that A has rank r if and only if A contains an invertible $r \times r$ submatrix and no larger square submatrix is invertible. Demonstrate part of this statement by explaining (a) why an $m \times n$ matrix A of rank r has an $m \times r$ submatrix A_1 of rank r, and (b) why A_1 has an invertible $r \times r$ submatrix A_2.

The concept of rank plays an important role in the design of engineering control systems, such as the space shuttle system mentioned in this chapter's introductory example. A *state-space model* of a control system includes a difference equation of the form

$$\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k + B\mathbf{u}_k \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, \ldots \tag{1}$$

where A is $n \times n$, B is $n \times m$, $\{\mathbf{x}_k\}$ is a sequence of "state vectors" in $\mathbb{R}^n$ that describe the state of the system at discrete times, and $\{\mathbf{u}_k\}$ is a *control*, or *input*, sequence. The pair (A, B) is said to be **controllable** if

$$\operatorname{rank}\,[\,B \quad AB \quad A^2B \quad \cdots \quad A^{n-1}B\,] = n \tag{2}$$

The matrix that appears in (2) is called the **controllability matrix** for the system. If (A, B) is controllable, then the system can be controlled, or driven from the state $\mathbf{0}$ to any specified state $\mathbf{v}$ (in $\mathbb{R}^n$) in at most n steps, simply by choosing an appropriate control sequence in $\mathbb{R}^m$. This fact is illustrated in Exercise 18 for $n = 4$ and $m = 2$. For a further discussion of controllability, see this text's web site (Case Study for Chapter 4).

WEB

18. Suppose A is a 4×4 matrix and B is a 4×2 matrix, and let $\mathbf{u}_0, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_3$ represent a sequence of input vectors in $\mathbb{R}^2$.

a. Set $\mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{0}$, compute $\mathbf{x}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{x}_4$ from equation (1), and write a formula for $\mathbf{x}_4$ involving the controllability matrix M appearing in equation (2). (*Note:* The matrix M is constructed as a partitioned matrix. Its overall size here is 4×8.)

b. Suppose (A, B) is controllable and $\mathbf{v}$ is any vector in $\mathbb{R}^4$. Explain why there exists a control sequence $\mathbf{u}_0, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_3$ in $\mathbb{R}^2$ such that $\mathbf{x}_4 = \mathbf{v}$.

Determine if the matrix pairs in Exercises 19–22 are controllable.

19. $A = \begin{bmatrix} .9 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -.9 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & .5 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

20. $A = \begin{bmatrix} .8 & -.3 & 0 \\ .2 & .5 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -.5 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$

21. [**M**] $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -2 & -4.2 & -4.8 & -3.6 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$

22. [**M**] $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & -13 & -12.2 & -1.5 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$